DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 143 238 FL 008 821

AUTHOR	Cooper, Paul V.; Rice, Oliver
TITLE	Djerma Basic Course.
INSTITUTION	Peace Corps, Washington, D.C.
PUB DATE	[66]
CONTRACT	PC-72-556
NOTE	314p.; Best copy available
EDRS PRICE	MF-$0.83 HC-$16.73 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	*African Languages; Audiolingual Methods; Autoinstructional Aids; Grammar; Instructional Materials; *Intensive Language Courses; *Language Instruction; Language Skills; Pattern Drills (Language); *Second Language Learning; Tape Recordings; *Textbooks
IDENTIFIERS	Dialogs (Language Learning); *Djerma

ABSTRACT

This textbook presents the essential structural features of Djerma as it is currently spoken in the western region of Niger. The course is organized into 30 units which constitute instructional material for from 300 to 400 hours of classroom instruction. It is specifically designed for intensive training programs of approximately 4 to 5 hours per day, or 30 hours per week, extending over a period of 10 to 12 weeks. Thirty tape recordings, containing the dialogues and drills of the 30 units, were developed to accompany the text. These should be used regularly by the student in a language laboratory or with a tape recorder for reinforcement of what has been learned in the classroom. In the ideal learning situation, the student will have access to: (1) a native speaker of Djerma who will act as a teacher and as a model of his language whom the student will imitate in intensive drill sessions; and (2) a linguistic scientist who will answer questions about the structure of the language. The course is, however, to a large degree self-instructional, and the student who lacks the opportunity for formal classroom instruction can make considerable progress by diligent use of text and tapes. (Author/CLK)

****
* Documents acquired by ERIC include many informal unpublished *
* materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort *
* to obtain the best copy available. Nevertheless, items of marginal *
* reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality *
* of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available *
* via the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not *
* responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions *
* supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original. *
****

ED143238

DJERMA BASIC COURSE

prepared by

English Language Services, Inc.
800 Eighteenth St., N.W.
Washington, D. C.

These materials were prepared by
English Language Services, Inc.
for the Peace Corps under
Contract No. PC-72-556.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH,
EDUCATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

Peace Corps

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC) AND THE ERIC SYSTEM CONTRACTORS."

FL008821

PREFACE

Djerma Basic Course was prepared in the field by Paul V. Cooper, linguist, and Oliver Rice, writer and editor. The structural analysis was aided by reference to Practical Method for the Study of the Zerma Language, Revised Edition, 1965, developed by the Mission Chrétienne d'Afrique, Niamey, Niger. Extensive interviews were conducted with Moussa Seini, the principal informant, and with the following native speakers: Marcel Alimatou, Birama Keita, Terese Keita, and Souna Mahamane. The voices heard on the tapes are those of Moussa Durafey, Kadijito Keita, Terese Keita, Souna Mahamane, and Moussa Seini. The recordings were made in the studios of Radio Niger, Niamey.

INTRODUCTION

For Instructor and Students

Course Description

Djerma Basic Course presents the essential structural features of Djerma as it is currently spoken in the western region of Niger. The course is organized into 30 units which constitute instructional material for from 300 to 400 hours of classroom instruction. It is specifically designed for intensive training programs of approximately 4 to 5 hours per day, or 30 hours per week, extending over a period of 10 to 12 weeks.

Accompanying Djerma Basic Course are 30 tape recordings containing the dialogues and drills of the 30 units. These should be used regularly by the student in a language laboratory or with a tape recorder for reinforcement of what has been learned in the classroom.

In the ideal learning situation the student will have access to (1) a native speaker of Djerma who will act as a teacher and as a model of his language whom the student will imitate in intensive drill sessions; and (2) a linguistic scientist who will answer questions about the structure of the language. The course is, however, to a large degree self-instructional, and the student who lacks the opportunity for formal classroom instruction can make considerable progress by diligent use of text and tapes.

Methodology

Units 1-20 contain Dialogues, Structural Drills, and Phonology Drills. Units 21-30 contain Dialogues and Structural Drills only. Where appropriate, there are notes on the Dialogues, Structural Drills, and Phonology Drills.

In accordance with the principle that language learning is over-learning, each unit contains exhaustive drills based on the utterances of the dialogues. The student is thus provided with material through which he can internalize Djerma structures by manipulating them in their variety of forms and combinations, thus gradually acquiring the habits of automatic response and control necessary for fluency in the language.

General Comments

Use normal conversational speed. Do not speak more slowly than your instructor, and do not ask him to slow down his normal speech tempo. With repeated, careful listening, facility in comprehension will increase. This is the best preparation for understanding the rapid stream of speech produced by native speakers.

Use Djerma almost exclusively in the classroom. At least 80% of classroom time should be spent hearing and speaking the target language. Talk about the language should be kept to a minimum.

Master the material as you go. Review frequently. Progress will be most rapid if the material of each unit is thoroughly learned before going on to the next.

Usage is the criterion for what is acceptable in language. Native speakers of a language often differ as to what is acceptable, depending on their dialects. If your instructor pronounces certain words in a manner different from that indicated in the text or on the tape, imitate your instructor but be aware of existing differences.

Procedures

Dialogues

Most of the units begin with a series of dialogues which contain the basic material of the unit. These dialogues should be thoroughly memorized. To this end, imitate your instructor and/or work carefully with the tapes.

Dialogues are given with either their English literal or contextual equivalents. The letters "A" and "B" appearing to the left of each complete utterance represent different speakers. New words or phrases are listed separately just above the complete utterances.

It is suggested that the instructor begin a new unit by reading aloud the complete utterances of the first dialogue at least three times. Next, he should read aloud the entire dialogue, including new vocabulary, at least twice. During this time, students' books should be closed. Students should hear each utterance before seeing it. Then the instructor should model each utterance in turn and have the entire class repeat the utterance chorally at least three times.

When the instructor is satisfied that the choral repetition is reasonably accurate in pronunciation, intonation, and stress, and that the speed is adequate, he should drill each student individually on the same utterance as many times as necessary to produce satisfactory performance. If the instructor finds that a student has considerable difficulty with any portion of an utterance, even after several attempts, he should go on to the next student and return at another time to the student who is having difficulty.

When the entire class has gone through all the dialogues of the unit chorally and individually, with books closed, the students should open their books and listen to the instructor read the complete dialogues again, comparing their aural impressions with the printed page and noting the English equivalents. The instructor should then read each utterance and have the students read after him at least twice.

At this point two students should participate in the dialogue, taking parts A and B respectively and practising it until it is virtually memorized. This procedure should continue around the class until each student has played both roles.

If questions arise at this point concerning why the Djerma utterance is as it is, the instructor should not allow himself to be diverted from his primary task of serving as the best model of the language and as drill master. He should not attempt a discussion of the language's history but should merely state that this is the way the Djermas express themselves. The linguistic scientist and/or the notes on the dialogues will answer essential questions concerning the structural items presented.

Phonology Drills

Phonology Drills provide drills on the important phonological features of Djerma. They may be used by the instructor in the classroom in guided imitation drill sessions similar to those employed for the dialogues. Alternately, the instructor may choose only those items drilling sounds which have proved difficult for his students. The Phonology Drills of Units 1-4 are essentially syllable drills and are built up in reverse order to preserve the normal intonation features of the sentence.

Structural Drills

Structural Drills provide exhaustive practice in the structures found in the dialogues. There are substitution drills, response drills, and expansion drills. Each item should be thoroughly drilled until the students can say the drills automatically and understand the meaning of each one. Mastery of the drills means that the student can understand and produce the drill items fluently and automatically with his book closed.

Substitution Drills. The instructor reads aloud the first or model utterance of a drill, invites student repetition, reads the next utterance, which contains the substitution item, again invites student repetition, continuing in this manner through the entire drill so that each student is able to repeat each drill item at least twice.

At this point the instructor again gives the first or model utterance. He then gives only the cue item (underlined substitution item) of the next utterance and calls on a student to give the complete utterance. Similarly, the instructor provides each of the following cue items in turn and designates other students to respond. An example of single-item substitution follows.

Instructor: Wodin ga ti ay wone. . . . iri . . .
Student: Wodin ga ti iri wone.
Instructor: . . . a . . .
Student: Wodin ga ti a wone.
Instructor: . . . i . . .
Student: Wodin ga ti i wone.
Instructor: . . . ay . . .
Student: Wodin ga ti ay wone.

Following is an example of double-item substitution.

Instructor: Ni zen da'ga ay? . . . aran . . . i'ga . . .
Student: Aran zen da'ga i'ga?
Instructor: . . . a . . . iri . . .
Student: A zen da'ga iri?
Instructor: . . . iri . . . i'gey . . .
Student: Iri zen da'ga i'gey?

Instructor: . . . ni . . . ay . . .

Student: *Ni* zen da'ga *ay*?

Response Drills. The instructor works through a response drill with the students for familiarization as with the Substitution Drills. Then he again gives the first utterance and designates a student to provide the appropriate response. An example follows.

Instructor: I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda?

Student: I ga hima ga tyere ga.

Instructor: I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda?

Student: I ga dona ga tyere ga.

Instructor: I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda?

Student: I ga goy ga tyere ga.

As a variation, two or more students can conduct a response drill among themselves, then designate other students to conduct the next one. As a further variation, and to check mastery of the material, the instructor may give a response and designate a student to give the utterance that triggered it.

Expansion Drills. The instructor works through an expansion drill with the students for familiarization as with the Substitution and Response Drills. Then he again gives the first utterance followed by each expansion cue in turn and designates students to give the expanded sentences. An example follows.

Instructor: *Kolkoti* no iri ga duma. . . . damsi . . .

Student: *Damsi nda kolkoti* no iri ga duma.

Instructor: . . . hayni . . .

Student: Hayni nda damsi nda kolkoti no iri ga duma.

Instructor: Now give the original unexpanded utterance.

Student: Kolkoti no iri ga duma.

Phonology and Orthography

There are several orthographic systems currently in use for the representation of Djerma sounds. Since very little written material exists, and since most of that is being produced by the Service de l'Alphabétisation et de l'Education des Adultes of the Niger Ministry of Education, it has seemed advisable to adopt a modified form of the system used by the Service. The only difference is that, where the Service uses the circumflex accent over vowels and n to represent nasalization and velarization, we have used an apostrophe following the letter in question. Since elision of vowels has not been indicated in the text in order not to obscure the unelided forms of elided words, no confusion should result from the use of the apostrophe in place of the circumflex accent. The orthography employed represents the sounds of Djerma quite consistently, there being almost always a one-for-one correspondence between sound and symbol.

Stress. Many Djerma utterances contain a succession of monosyllables more or less evenly stressed. In most two-syllable words, stress is on the first syllable. The last syllable of some two-syllable words, however, appears to receive as much stress as the first syllable, if not more. In three- and four-syllable words, primary stress is on the first syllable with a secondary stress on the third syllable.

Tone. The function of tone in Djerma is a subject in need of more study. Djerma words exist having two or more different meanings, which appear to be distinguished, in isolation, only by a difference in tone. However, when these same words are uttered within the context of a sentence, the tonal distinction is blurred, and it is often difficult to detect the difference in tone heard previously when the word was uttered in isolation. Tonal distinctions must be learned as they occur. In general, the context is the best guide for understanding the meaning of individual words.

Vowel and Consonant Length. Vowel length and consonant length are in many cases phonemic, i. e., there is a difference in meaning between a word uttered with a short vowel and the same word uttered with a long vowel; likewise, between a word uttered with a single consonant and the same word uttered with a double consonant. For such contrasts, see the note to the Phonology Drills of Unit 12, p. 106.

Tonal and length contrasts are presented in the Phonology Drills of Units 12-20.

Vowels (Oral)

Letter	Description	Example
i	High front unrounded, unglided; resembles sound of i in "machine."	i 'they'
e	Lower-mid front, lax; resembles sound of e in "let."	ne 'here'
a	Low central unrounded; resembles sound of a in "father."	a 'he/she'
o	Lower-mid back rounded, lax; resembles sound of o in "roll."	fo 'which'
u	High back rounded, unglided; resembles sound of u in "jute."	fu 'house'

Vowels (Nasal)

i'	High front unrounded, unglided, nasal; resembles sound of i in "ink."	i'ga 'he/she' (emphatic)
e'	Lower-mid front, lax, nasal; resembles sound of French in in "vin."	de'di 'fire'
a'	Low central unrounded, nasal; resembles sound of French an in "quand."	ya' (plural marker)
o'	Lower-mid back rounded, lax, nasal; resembles sound of French on in "bon."	bo' 'on'
u'	High back rounded, unglided, nasal; resembles sound of French ou in "poumon."	hu'kuna 'today'

Consonants

p	Voiceless bilabial stop; like sound of p in "spin."	po'piter 'potato'

Letter	Description	Example
b	Voiced bilabial stop; like sound of b in "book."	ban 'to finish'
t	Voiceless dental stop; like sound of French t in "tu."	to 'to arrive'
d	Voiced dental stop; like sound of French d in "dire."	di 'to see'
ty	Voiceless palatal stop; no exact equivalent; sound varies in pronunciation between the ty of "don't ya" and the ky sound in "cute."	tyi'di 'plus'
dy	Voiced palatal stop; no exact equivalent; sound varies in pronunciation between the dy of "d'ya hear" and the gy of "I dig ya."	dyiri 'year'
k	Voiceless velar stop; like sound of k in "skiing."	ka 'to come'
g	Voiced velar stop; like sound of g in "gas."	goro 'to sit'
m	Voiced bilabial nasal; like sound of m in "mama."	mo 'also'
n	Voiced alveolar nasal; like sound of n in "no."	ne 'here'
ny	Palatal nasal; like sound of ny in "canyon."	nya 'mother'
n'	Dorso-velar nasal resonant; like sound of ng in "sing," but, unlike English, sometimes occurs initially.	n'wa 'to eat'

Letter	Description	Example
l	Voiced alveolar lateral; like sound of l in "lose."	lamba 'number'
r	Voiced apico-alveolar flap; like sound of r in standard British pronunciation of "very."	ra 'in'
f	Voiceless labio-dental fricative; like sound of f in "fire."	fo 'greeting'
s	Alveolar grooved voiceless fricative; like sound of s in "see."	safun 'soap'
z	Alveolar grooved voiced fricative; like sound of z in "zebra."	zen 'old'
h	Glottal fricative; like sound of h in "has."	ha' 'to drink'

Glides

w	Labio-velar; like sound of w in "wash."	woy 'ten'
y	Palatal; like sound of y in "yes."	ye 'to return'

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

PREFACE ii

INTRODUCTION iii

UNIT 1 1

Dialogue 1 1

Dialogue 2 1

Dialogue 3 1

Dialogue 4 1

Dialogue 5 2

Dialogue 6 2

Dialogue 7 2

Dialogue 8 2

Dialogue 9 2

Dialogue 10 3

Dialogue 11 3

Dialogue 12 3

Dialogue 13 3

Dialogue 14 4

Dialogue 15 4

Dialogue 16 5

Notes on the Dialogues 5

Phonology Drills 6

Structural Drills 7

UNIT 2 11

Dialogue 1 11

Dialogue 2 11

Dialogue 3 11

Dialogue 4 12

Dialogue 5 12

Dialogue 6 12

Notes on the Dialogues 13

Page

Phonology Drills 13

Structural Drills 16

UNIT 3 21

Dialogue 1 21

Dialogue 2 21

Dialogue 3 21

Dialogue 4 22

Notes on the Dialogues 22

Phonology Drills 22

Structural Drills 24

UNIT 4 30

Dialogue 1 30

Dialogue 2 30

Notes on the Dialogues 31

Phonology Drills 31

Structural Drills 33

UNIT 5 40

Dialogue 1 40

Dialogue 2 40

Dialogue 3 40

Dialogue 4 41

Notes on the Dialogues 41

Structural Drills 41

Phonology Drills 47

UNIT 6 48

Dialogue 1 48

Dialogue 2 48

Dialogue 3 49

Dialogue 4 49

Note on the Dialogues 49

Page
Structural Drills 50
Phonology Drills 55
UNIT 7 56
Dialogue 1 56
Dialogue 2 56
Dialogue 3 56
Dialogue 4 56
Dialogue 5 56
Dialogue 6 57
Dialogue 7 57
Dialogue 8 57
Notes on the Dialogues 58
Structural Drills 58
Phonology Drills 64
UNIT 8 65
Dialogue 1 65
Dialogue 2 65
Dialogue 3 65
Dialogue 4 66
Structural Drills 66
Phonology Drills 71
UNIT 9 72
Dialogue 1 72
Dialogue 2 72
Dialogue 3 72
Dialogue 4 73
Dialogue 5 73
Dialogue 6 73
Note on the Dialogues 74
Structural Drills 74
Phonology Drills 79
UNIT 10 80
Dialogue 1 80

Page
Dialogue 2 80
Dialogue 3 81
Dialogue 4 81
Note on the Dialogues 81
Structural Drills 81
Phonology Drills 86
UNIT 11 87
Dialogue 1 87
Dialogue 2 87
Dialogue 3 88
Dialogue 4 88
Dialogue 5 88
Dialogue 6 89
Dialogue 7 89
Dialogue 8 89
Dialogue 9 89
Notes on the Dialogues 90
Structural Drills 90
Phonology Drills 96
UNIT 12 97
Dialogue 1 97
Dialogue 2 97
Dialogue 3 97
Dialogue 4 98
Structural Drills 98
Phonology Drills 104
Note on the Phonology Drills 106
UNIT 13 107
Dialogue 1 107
Dialogue 2 107
Dialogue 3 108
Dialogue 4 108

Page
Dialogue 5 109
Dialogue 6 109
Notes on the Dialogues 109
Structural Drills 109
Phonology Drills 114
UNIT 14 117
Dialogue 1 117
Dialogue 2 117
Dialogue 3 118
Dialogue 4 118
Dialogue 5 119
Dialogue 6 119
Dialogue 7 119
Note on the Dialogues 119
Structural Drills 120
Note on the Structural Drills 123
Phonology Drills 123
UNIT 15 125
Structural Drills 125
Note on the Structural Drills 134
Phonology Drills 134
UNIT 16 136
Dialogue 1 136
Dialogue 2 136
Dialogue 3 137
Dialogue 4 137
Dialogue 5 137
Notes on the Dialogues 138
Structural Drills 138
Phonology Drills 142
UNIT 17 144
Structural Drills 144

Page
Phonology Drills 151
UNIT 18 153
Dialogue 1 153
Dialogue 2 154
Dialogue 3 154
Dialogue 4 154
Structural Drills 154
Phonology Drills 158
UNIT 19 160
Dialogue 1 160
Dialogue 2 160
Dialogue 3 161
Dialogue 4 161
Notes on the Dialogues 161
Structural Drills 161
Phonology Drills 169
UNIT 20 171
Dialogue 1 171
Dialogue 2 171
Dialogue 3 171
Dialogue 4 171
Dialogue 5 172
Dialogue 6 172
Dialogue 7 172
Dialogue 8 172
Dialogue 9 173
Dialogue 10 173
Dialogue 11 173
Dialogue 12 173
Structural Drills 174
Phonology Drills 179
UNIT 21 181
Dialogue 1 181
Dialogue 2 181

Page

Dialogue 3 182
Dialogue 4 182
Structural Drills 183
UNIT 22 187
Dialogue 1 187
Dialogue 2 187
Dialogue 3 188
Dialogue 4 188
Dialogue 5 188
Dialogue 6 188
Note on the Dialogues 189
Structural Drills 189
UNIT 23 194
Dialogue 1 194
Dialogue 2 194
Dialogue 3 195
Dialogue 4 196
Notes on the Dialogues 196
Structural Drills 199
UNIT 24 203
Structural Drills 203
UNIT 25 208
Dialogue 1 208
Dialogue 2 208
Dialogue 3 208
Dialogue 4 208
Dialogue 5 209
Dialogue 6 209
Dialogue 7 210
Structural Drills 210
UNIT 26 216
Dialogue 1 216
Dialogue 2 216
Dialogue 3 217
Dialogue 4 217
Notes on the Dialogues 218
Structural Drills 218
UNIT 27 223
Dialogue 1 223
Dialogue 2 223
Dialogue 3 224
Dialogue 4 224
Dialogue 5 224
Note on the Dialogues 225
Structural Drills 225
UNIT 28 231
Dialogue 1 231
Dialogue 2 231
Structural Drills 232
UNIT 29 238
Dialogue 1 238
Dialogue 2 238
Dialogue 3 239
Dialogue 4 239
Dialogue 5 239
Dialogue 6 239
Note on the Dialogues 240
Structural Drills 240
UNIT 30 249
Dialogue 1 249
Dialogue 2 250
Note on the Dialogues 250
Structural Drills 250
DJERMA-ENGLISH-FRENCH GLOSSARY 260
ENGLISH-DJERMA-FRENCH GLOSSARY 273
FRENCH-DJERMA-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

UNIT 1

Dialogue 1

fofo	hello
A: Fofo.	A: Hello.
ngwoya	hello
B: Ngwoya.	B: Hello.

Dialogue 2

ni	you (sg. subject)
kani	to lie down
bani	health
A: Ni kani[1] bani?[2]	A: How are you?
samey	good
B: Bani samey.	B: Very well.

Dialogue 3

A: Ni kani bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Ni kani bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 4

aran	you (pl. subject)
A: Aran kani bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey.	B: Very well.

Dialogue 5

A: Aran kani bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Ni kani bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 6

A: Aran kani bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Aran kani bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 7

foy	to spend the day
A: Ni foy[1] bani?[3]	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey.	B: Very well.

Dialogue 8

A: Ni foy bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Ni foy bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 9

A: Aran foy bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey.	B: Very well.

Dialogue 10

A: Aran foy bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Ni foy bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 11

A: Aran foy bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Aran foy bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 12

A: Fofo.	A: Hello.
B: Ngwoya.	B: Hello.
A: Ni foy bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Ni foy bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 13

A: Fofo.	A: Hello.
B: Ngwoya.	B: Hello.
A: Aran foy bani?	A: How are you?
B: Bani samey. Aran foy bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey.	A: Very well.

Dialogue 14

A: Pofo	A: Hello
B: Ngwoya.	B: Hello.
mate	how, what
go	to be (Present)
Mate ni go?	How are you?
ay	I
A: Ay go bani samey. Mate aran go?	A: I'm very well. How are you?
iri	we
B: Iri go bani samey.	B: We're very well.

Dialogue 15

man	where
koy	to go
A: Man ni koy?[1]	A: Where did you go?
habo	the market
do[4]	to, to the place of
B: Ay koy habo do.	B: I went to the market.
Fatu[5]	Fatu
A: Mate Fatu go?	A: How is Fatu?
a	he/she/it
B: A go bani samey.	B: She's very well.

A: Man a koy?	A: Where did she go?
kwara	the village
B: A koy kwara do.	B: She went to the village.

Dialogue 16

A: Man aran koy?	A: Where did you go?
faro	the field
B: Iri koy faro do.	B: We went to the field.
Bakari[6]	Bakari
nda	and
Yakuba[6]	Yakuba
A: Mate Bakari nda Yakuba go?	A: How are Bakari and Yakuba?
i	they
B: I go bani samey.	B: They're very well.
A: Man i koy?	A: Where did they go?
fuwo	the house
B: I koy fuwo do.	B: They went to the house.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. This tense, the Past, comparable to the Simple Past in English, denotes completed action at an unspecified time in the past. It is identical in form with the Infinitive.
2. A morning greeting.
3. An afternoon greeting.
4. Indicates movement toward a place or reinforces location.
5. A female name.
6. A male name.

Phonology Drills

A. fo.
Fofo.

B. ya.
Ngwoya.

C. ni?
bani?
ni
kani
kani bani?
ni
Ni kani bani?

D. mey.
samey.
ni
bani
Bani samey.

E. ran
aran
kani bani?
Aran kani bani?

F. foy
bani?
foy bani?
ni
Ni foy bani?

G. aran
foy bani?
Aran foy bani?

H. go?
ni
ni go?
te
mate
Mate ni go?

I. go
ay
ay go
bani samey?
Ay go bani samey?

J. go?
aran
aran go?
mate
Mate aran go?

K. go
iri
iri go
bani samey.
Iri go bani samey.

L. koy?
ni
ni koy?
man
Man ni koy?

M. do.
bo
habo
habo do.
koy
ay
ay koy
Ay koy habo do.

N. go?
tu
Fatu
Fatu go?
mate
Mate Fatu go?

O. go
a
a go
bani samey.
A go bani samey.

P. koy?
a
a koy?
man
Man a koy?

Q. ra.
kwara.
koy
a koy
A koy kwara.

R. koy?
aran
aran koy?
man
Man aran koy?

S. do.
ro
faro
faro do.
koy
iri
iri koy
Iri koy faro do.

T. go?
ba
kuba
Yakuba
Yakuba go?
nda
nda Yakuba go?
ri
kari
Bakari
Bakari nda Yakuba
Bakari nda Yakuba go?
mate
Mate Bakari nda Yakuba go?

U. go
i
i go
bani samey.
I go bani samey.

V. koy?
i
i koy?
man
Man i koy?

W. do.
wo
fuwo
fuwo do.
koy
i
i koy
I koy fuwo do.

Structural Drills

ay	'I'	iri	'we'
ni	'you (sg.)'	aran	'you (pl.)'
a	'he/she/it'	i	'they'

A. 1. Mate ni go?	A. 1. How are you?
2. Mate aran go?	2. How are you?
3. Mate a go?	3. How is he/she?
4. Mate i go?	4. How are they?
B. 1. Mate Fatu go?	B. 1. How is Fatu?
2. Mate Bakari go?	2. How is Bakari?
3. Mate Yakuba go?	3. How is Yakuba?
C. 1. Mate Bakari nda Yakuba go?	C. 1. How are Bakari and Yakuba?
2. Mate Yakuba nda Fatu go?	2. How are Yakuba and Fatu?
3. Mate Fatu nda Bakari go?	3. How are Fatu and Bakari?
D. 1. Ay go bani samey.	D. 1. I'm very well.
2. Iri go bani samey.	2. We're very well.
3. A go bani samey.	3. He's/She's very well.
4. I go bani samey.	4. They're very well.
E. 1. Man ni koy?	E. 1. Where did you go?
2. Man aran koy?	2. Where did you go?
3. Man a koy?	3. Where did he/she go?
4. Man i koy?	4. Where did they go?
F. 1. Ay koy habo do.	F. 1. I went to the market.
2. Ay koy kwara do.	2. I went to the village.
3. Ay koy faro do.	3. I went to the field.
4. Ay koy fuwo do.	4. I went to the house.
G. 1. Ni koy habo do.	G. 1. You went to the market.
2. Ni koy kwara do.	2. You went to the village.
3. Ni koy faro do.	3. You went to the field.
4. Ni koy fuwo do.	4. You went to the house.

H. 1. A koy habo do.	H. 1. He/She went to the market.
2. A koy kwara do.	2. He/She went to the village.
3. A koy faro do.	3. He/She went to the field.
4. A koy fuwo do.	4. He/She went to the house.
I. 1. Iri koy habo do.	I. 1. We went to the market.
2. Iri koy kwara do.	2. We went to the village.
3. Iri koy faro do.	3. We went to the field.
4. Iri koy fuwo do.	4. We went to the house.
J. 1. Aran koy habo do.	J. 1. You went to the market.
2. Aran koy kwara do.	2. You went to the village.
3. Aran koy faro do.	3. You went to the field.
4. Aran koy fuwo do.	4. You went to the house.
K. 1. I koy habo do.	K. 1. They went to the market.
2. I koy kwara do.	2. They went to the village.
3. I koy faro do.	3. They went to the field.
4. I koy fuwo do.	4. They went to the house.
L. 1. Ay koy habo do.	L. 1. I went to the market.
2. Ni koy habo do.	2. You went to the market.
3. A koy habo do.	3. He/She went to the market.
4. Iri koy habo do.	4. We went to the market.
5. Aran koy habo do.	5. You went to the market.
6. I koy habo do.	6. They went to the market.
M. 1. Ay koy kwara do.	M. 1. I went to the village.
2. Ni koy kwara do.	2. You went to the village.
3. A koy kwara do.	3. He/She went to the village.
4. Iri koy kwara do.	4. We went to the village.
5. Aran koy kwara do.	5. You went to the village.
6. I koy kwara do.	6. They went to the village.

N. 1. Ay koy faro do.	N. 1. I went to the field.
2. Ni koy faro do.	2. You went to the field.
3. A koy faro do.	3. He/She went to the field.
4. Iri koy faro do.	4. We went to the field.
5. Aran koy faro do.	5. You went to the field.
6. I koy faro do.	6. They went to the field.
O. 1. Ay koy fuwo do.	O. 1. I went to the house.
2. Ni koy fuwo do.	2. You went to the house.
3. A koy fuwo do.	3. He/She went to the house.
4. Iri koy fuwo do.	4. We went to the house.
5. Aran koy fuwo do.	5. You went to the house.
6. I koy fuwo do.	6. They went to the house.

UNIT 2

Dialogue 1

wati fo	when
no[1]	it is/it was/ it will be/they are/they were/they will be
ka	to come
A: Wati fo no ni ka?	A: When did you come?
bi	yesterday
B: Bi no ay ka.	B: I came yesterday.
Abdu[2]	Abdu
wala[3]	(signals a question)
A: Abdu ka wala?	A: Did Abdu come?
oho	yes
B: Oho, a ka.	B: Yes, he came.

Dialogue 2

A: Wati fo no aran ka?	A: When did you come?
B: Bi no iri ka.	B: We came yesterday.
Maman[2]	Maman
Amina[4]	Amina
A: Maman nda Amina ka wala?	A: Did Maman and Amina come?
B: Oho, i ka.	B: Yes, they came.

Dialogue 3

A: Bi ni koy habo do?	A: Did you go to the market yesterday?
ha'a	no
mana	(signals the negative in the Past)
B: Ha'a, bi ay mana[1] koy.	B: No, I didn't go yesterday.

A: Bakari koy wala?	A: Did Bakari go?
B: Ha'a, a mana koy.	B: No, he didn't go.

Dialogue 4

A: Bi aran koy habo do?	A: Did you go to the market yesterday?
B: Ha'a, bi iri mana koy.	B: No, we didn't go yesterday.
A: Fatu nda Yakuba koy wala?	A: Did Fatu and Yakuba go?
B: Ha'a, i mana koy.	B: No, they didn't go.

Dialogue 5

A: Bi no Abdu ka wala?	A: Did Abdu come yesterday?
B: Oho, bi no a ka.	B: Yes, he came yesterday.
A: Bi no Maman ka wala?	A: Did Maman come yesterday?
B: Ha'a, bi a mana ka.	B: No, he didn't come yesterday.
A: Bakari nda Fatu ka wala?	A: Did Bakari and Fatu come?
B: Ha'a, i mana ka.	B: No, they didn't come.

Dialogue 6

kala	until
nda	with
to'ton	to increase
A: Kala nda to'ton.	A: See you later.
B: Kala nda to'ton.	B: See you later.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. In an affirmative expression, no precedes the subject pronoun; in a negative expression, mana follows the subject pronoun.
2. A male name.
3. The use of wala is optional.
4. A female name.

Phonology Drills

A.
ka?
ni
ni ka?
no
no ni ka?
fo
ti
wati
wati fo
Wati fo no ni ka?

B.
ka.
ay
ay ka.
no
no ay ka.
bi
Bi no ay ka.

C.
la?
wala?
ka wala?
du
Abdu
Abdu ka wala?

D.
ka.
a ka.
ho
oho
Oho, a ka.

E.
ka?
ran
aran
aran ka?
no
no aran ka?
wati fo
Wati fo no aran ka?

F.
ka.
ri
iri
iri ka.
no
no iri ka.
bi
Bi no iri ka.

G.
na
mina
Amina
ka wala?
Amina ka wala?
nda
nda Amina ka wala?
man
Maman
Maman nda Amina
Maman nda Amina ka wala?

H. ka.
i ka.
ho
oho
Oho, i ka.

I. do?
bo
habo
habo do?
koy
koy habo do?
ni
ni koy habo do?
bi
Bi ni koy habo do?

J. koy.
mana
mana koy.
ay
ay mana koy.
bi
bi ay mana koy.
ha'a
Ha'a, bi ay mana koy.

K. wala?
koy
koy wala?
ri
kari
Bakari
Bakari koy wala?

L. a
mana koy.
a mana koy.
ha'a
Ha'a, a mana koy.

M. do?
habo
habo do?
koy
koy habo do?
aran
aran koy habo do?
bi
Bi aran koy habo do?

N. koy.
mana
mana koy.
iri
iri mana koy.
bi
bi iri mana koy.
ha'a
Ha'a, bi iri mana koy.

O. ba
kuba
Yakuba
koy wala?
Yakuba koy wala?
nda
nda Yakuba koy wala?
tu
Fatu
Fatu nda Yakuba
Fatu nda Yakuba koy wala?

P. i
mana koy.
i mana koy.
ha'a
Ha'a, i mana koy.

R. ka.
a
a ka.
no
no a ka.
bi
bi no a ka.
oho
Oho, bi no a ka.

T. ka.
mana
mana ka.
a
a mana ka.
bi
bi a mana ka.
ha'a
Ha'a, bi a mana ka.

Q. wala?
ka
ka wala?
Abdu
Abdu ka wala?
no
no Abdu ka wala?
bi
Bi no Abdu ka wala?

S. wala?
ka
ka wala?
Maman
Maman ka wala?
no
no Maman ka wala?
bi
Bi no Maman ka wala?

U. wala?
ka
ka wala?
Fatu ka wala?
nda
nda Fatu ka wala?
Bakari
Bakari nda Fatu ka wala?

V. ka.
mana
mana ka.
i
i mana ka.
ha'a
Ha'a, i mana ka.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Wati fo no ni ka?	A. 1. When did you come?
2. Wati fo no aran ka?	2. When did you come?
3. Wati fo no a ka?	3. When did he/she come?
4. Wati fo no i ka?	4. When did they come?
B. 1. Wati fo no ni koy?	B. 1. When did you go?
2. Wati fo no aran koy?	2. When did you go?
3. Wati fo no a koy?	3. When did he/she go?
4. Wati fo no i koy?	4. When did they go?
C. 1. Wati fo no Abdu ka?	C. 1. When did Abdu come?
2. Wati fo no Maman ka?	2. When did Maman come?
3. Wati fo no Amina ka?	3. When did Amina come?
4. Wati fo no Bakari ka?	4. When did Bakari come?
5. Wati fo no Fatu ka?	5. When did Fatu come?
6. Wati fo no Yakuba ka?	6. When did Yakuba come?
D. 1. Wati fo no Abdu koy?	D. 1. When did Abdu go?
2. Wati fo no Maman koy?	2. When did Maman go?
3. Wati fo no Amina koy?	3. When did Amina go?
4. Wati fo no Bakari koy?	4. When did Bakari go?
5. Wati fo no Fatu koy?	5. When did Fatu go?
6. Wati fo no Yakuba koy?	6. When did Yakuba go?
E. 1. Bi no ay ka.	E. 1. I came yesterday.
2. Bi no iri ka.	2. We came yesterday.
3. Bi no a ka.	3. He/She came yesterday.
4. Bi no i ka.	4. They came yesterday.
F. 1. Bi no ay koy.	F. 1. I went yesterday.
2. Bi no iri koy.	2. We went yesterday.
3. Bi no a koy.	3. He/She went yesterday.
4. Bi no i koy.	4. They went yesterday.

G. 1. Bi no Abdu ka.	G. 1. Abdu came yesterday.
2. Bi no Maman ka.	2. Maman came yesterday.
3. Bi no Amina ka.	3. Amina came yesterday.
4. Bi no Bakari ka.	4. Bakari came yesterday.
5. Bi no Fatu ka.	5. Fatu came yesterday.
6. Bi no Yakuba ka.	6. Yakuba came yesterday.
H. 1. Bi no Abdu koy.	H. 1. Abdu went yesterday.
2. Bi no Maman koy.	2. Maman went yesterday.
3. Bi no Amina koy.	3. Amina went yesterday.
4. Bi no Bakari koy.	4. Bakari went yesterday.
5. Bi no Fatu koy.	5. Fatu went yesterday.
6. Bi no Yakuba koy.	6. Yakuba went yesterday.
I. 1. Bi ay mana ka.	I. 1. I didn't come yesterday.
2. Bi iri mana ka.	2. We didn't come yesterday.
3. Bi a mana ka.	3. He/She didn't come yesterday.
4. Bi i mana ka.	4. They didn't come yesterday.
J. 1. Bi ay mana koy.	J. 1. I didn't go yesterday.
2. Bi iri mana koy.	2. We didn't go yesterday.
3. Bi a mana koy.	3. He/She didn't go yesterday.
4. Bi i mana koy.	4. They didn't go yesterday.
K. 1. Bi Abdu mana ka.	K. 1. Abdu didn't come yesterday.
2. Bi Maman mana ka.	2. Maman didn't come yesterday.
3. Bi Amina mana ka.	3. Amina didn't come yesterday.
4. Bi Bakari mana ka.	4. Bakari didn't come yesterday.
5. Bi Fatu mana ka.	5. Fatu didn't come yesterday.
6. Bi Yakuba mana ka.	6. Yakuba didn't come yesterday.
L. 1. Bi Abdu mana koy.	L. 1. Abdu didn't go yesterday.
2. Bi Maman mana koy.	2. Maman didn't go yesterday.
3. Bi Amina mana koy.	3. Amina didn't go yesterday.
4. Bi Bakari mana koy.	4. Bakari didn't go yesterday.
5. Bi Fatu mana koy.	5. Fatu didn't go yesterday.
6. Bi Yakuba mana koy.	6. Yakuba didn't go yesterday.

M. 1. Abdu ka wala?	M. 1. Did Abdu come?
2. Maman ka wala?	2. Did Maman come?
3. Amina ka wala?	3. Did Amina come?
4. Bakari ka wala?	4. Did Bakari come?
5. Fatu ka wala?	5. Did Fatu come?
6. Yakuba ka wala?	6. Did Yakuba come?

N. 1. Abdu koy wala?	N. 1. Did Abdu go?
2. Maman koy wala?	2. Did Maman go?
3. Amina koy wala?	3. Did Amina go?
4. Bakari koy wala?	4. Did Bakari go?
5. Fatu koy wala?	5. Did Fatu go?
6. Yakuba koy wala?	6. Did Yakuba go?

O. 1. Abdu nda Maman ka wala?	O. 1. Did Abdu and Maman come?
2. Maman nda Amina ka wala?	2. Did Maman and Amina come?
3. Amina nda Bakari ka wala?	3. Did Amina and Bakari come?
4. Bakari nda Fatu ka wala?	4. Did Bakari and Fatu come?
5. Fatu nda Yakuba ka wala?	5. Did Fatu and Yakuba come?
6. Yakuba nda Abdu ka wala?	6. Did Yakuba and Abdu come?

P. 1. Abdu nda Maman koy wala?	P. 1. Did Abdu and Maman go?
2. Maman nda Amina koy wala?	2. Did Maman and Amina go?
3. Amina nda Bakari koy wala?	3. Did Amina and Bakari go?
4. Bakari nda Fatu koy wala?	4. Did Bakari and Fatu go?
5. Fatu nda Yakuba koy wala?	5. Did Fatu and Yakuba go?
6. Yakuba nda Abdu koy wala?	6. Did Yakuba and Abdu go?

Q. 1. Oho, bi no ay ka.	Q. 1. Yes, I came yesterday.
2. Oho, bi no iri ka.	2. Yes, we came yesterday.
3. Oho, bi no a ka.	3. Yes, he/she came yesterday.
4. Oho, bi no i ka.	4. Yes, they came yesterday.

R. 1. Oho, bi no ay koy.	R. 1. Yes, I went yesterday.
2. Oho, bi no iri koy.	2. Yes, we went yesterday.
3. Oho, bi no a koy.	3. Yes, he/she went yesterday.
4. Oho, bi no i koy.	4. Yes, they went yesterday.
S. 1. Ha'a, bi ay mana ka.	S. 1. No, I didn't come yesterday.
2. Ha'a, bi iri mana ka.	2. No, we didn't come yesterday.
3. Ha'a, bi a mana ka.	3. No, he/she didn't come yesterday.
4. Ha'a, bi i mana ka.	4. No, they didn't come yesterday.
T. 1. Ha'a, bi ay mana koy.	T. 1. No, I didn't go yesterday.
2. Ha'a, bi iri mana koy.	2. No, we didn't go yesterday.
3. Ha'a, bi a mana koy.	3. No, he/she didn't go yesterday.
4. Ha'a, bi i mana koy.	4. No, they didn't go yesterday.
U. 1. Oho, bi no Abdu ka.	U. 1. Yes, Abdu came yesterday.
2. Oho, bi no Maman ka.	2. Yes, Maman came yesterday.
3. Oho, bi no Amina ka.	3. Yes, Amina came yesterday.
4. Oho, bi no Bakari ka.	4. Yes, Bakari came yesterday.
5. Oho, bi no Fatu ka.	5. Yes, Fatu came yesterday.
6. Oho, bi no Yakuba ka.	6. Yes, Yakuba came yesterday.
V. 1. Oho, bi no Abdu koy.	V. 1. Yes, Abdu went yesterday.
2. Oho, bi no Maman koy.	2. Yes, Maman went yesterday.
3. Oho, bi no Amina koy.	3. Yes, Amina went yesterday.
4. Oho, bi no Bakari koy.	4. Yes, Bakari went yesterday.
5. Oho, bi no Fatu koy.	5. Yes, Fatu went yesterday.
6. Oho, bi no Yakuba koy.	6. Yes, Yakuba went yesterday.
W. 1. Ha'a, bi Abdu mana ka.	W. 1. No, Abdu didn't come yesterday.
2. Ha'a, bi Maman mana ka.	2. No, Maman didn't come yesterday.
3. Ha'a, bi Amina mana ka.	3. No, Amina didn't come yesterday.
4. Ha'a, bi Bakari mana ka.	4. No, Bakari didn't come yesterday.
5. Ha'a, bi Fatu mana ka.	5. No, Fatu didn't come yesterday.
6. Ha'a, bi Yakuba mana ka.	6. No, Yakuba didn't come yesterday.

X. 1.	Ha'a, bi Abdu mana koy.	X. 1.	No, Abdu didn't go yesterday.
2.	Ha'a, bi Maman mana koy.	2.	No, Maman didn't go yesterday.
3.	Ha'a, bi Amina mana koy.	3.	No, Amina didn't go yesterday.
4.	Ha'a, bi Bakari mana koy.	4.	No, Bakari didn't go yesterday.
5.	Ha'a, bi Fatu mana koy.	5.	No, Fatu didn't go yesterday.
6.	Ha'a, bi Yakuba mana koy.	6.	No, Yakuba didn't go yesterday.
Y. 1.	Bi ni koy habo do?	Y. 1.	Did you go to the market yesterday?
2.	Bi aran koy habo do?	2.	Did you go to the market yesterday?
3.	Bi a koy habo do?	3.	Did he/she go to the market yesterday?
4.	Bi i koy habo do?	4.	Did they go to the market yesterday?
Z. 1.	Bi ni ka habo do?	Z. 1.	Did you come to the market yesterday?
2.	Bi aran ka habo do?	2.	Did you come to the market yesterday?
3.	Bi a ka habo do?	3.	Did he/she come to the market yesterday?
4.	Bi i ka habo do?	4.	Did they come to the market yesterday?
AA. 1.	Bi no Abdu ka wala?	AA. 1.	Did Abdu come yesterday?
2.	Bi no Maman ka wala?	2.	Did Maman come yesterday?
3.	Bi no Amina ka wala?	3.	Did Amina come yesterday?
4.	Bi no Bakari ka wala?	4.	Did Bakari come yesterday?
5.	Bi no Fatu ka wala?	5.	Did Fatu come yesterday?
6.	Bi no Yakuba ka wala?	6.	Did Yakuba come yesterday?
BB. 1.	Bi no Abdu koy wala?	BB. 1.	Did Abdu go yesterday?
2.	Bi no Maman koy wala?	2.	Did Maman go yesterday?
3.	Bi no Amina koy wala?	3.	Did Amina go yesterday?
4.	Bi no Bakari koy wala?	4.	Did Bakari go yesterday?
5.	Bi no Fatu koy wala?	5.	Did Fatu go yesterday?
6.	Bi no Yakuba koy wala?	6.	Did Yakuba go yesterday?

UNIT 3

Dialogue 1

A: Man ni koy bi?[1]	A: Where did you go yesterday?
B: Ay koy habo do.	B: I went to the market.
habu[2]	market (indef.)
bero[2]	big (def. sg.)
A: Ni koy habu bero do?[2]	A: Did you go to the big market?
kayna[2]	small (def./indef. sg.)
B: Ha'a, ay koy habu kayna do.	B: No, I went to the small market.

Dialogue 2

A: Man aran koy bi?	A: Where did you go yesterday?
B: Iri koy habo do.	B: We went to the market.
A: Aran koy habu bero do?[2]	A: Did you go to the big market?
B: Ha'a, iri koy habu kayna do.	B: No, we went to the small market.

Dialogue 3

A: Man a koy?	A: Where did he go?
B: A koy faro do.	B: He went to the field.
fari[2]	field (indef.)
A: A koy fari bero do?	A: Did he go to the big field?
B: Ha'a, a koy fari kayna do.	B: No, he went to the small field.

Dialogue 4

A: Man i koy?	A: Where did they go?
B: I koy faro do.	B: They went to the field.
A: I koy fari bero do?	A: Did they go to the big field?
B: Ha'a, i koy fari kayna do.	B: No, they went to the small field.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. *Bi* can occur at the beginning or the end of an expression.
2. Most Djerma nouns and adjectives have four forms: indefinite singular and plural and definite singular and plural. *Habu* 'market' and *fari* 'field' are indefinite singulars; *habo* 'market' and *faro* 'field' are definite singulars. *Bero* 'big' is a definite singular form. Certain nouns, like *kwara* 'village,' and certain adjectives, like *kayna* 'small,' have the same form in the definite and indefinite singular. When an adjective modifies a noun in a definite expression, the adjective takes the definite form and the noun the indefinite. Hereafter, the conventions "def." and "indef." will be used to indicate these structural variations.

Phonology Drills

A.

bi?
koy
koy bi?
ni
ni koy bi?
man
Man ni koy bi?

B.

do.
bo
habo
habo do.
koy
koy habo do.
ay
Ay koy habo do.

C.

do?
ro
bero
bero do?
bu
habu
habu bero do?
koy
koy habu bero do?
ni
Ni koy habu bero do?

D. do.
na
kayna
kayna do.
habu
habu kayna do.
koy
koy habu kayna do.
ay
ay koy habu kayna do.
ha'a
Ha'a, ay koy habu kayna do.

E. bi?
koy
koy bi?
ran
aran
aran koy bi?
man
Man aran koy bi?

F. do.
habo
habo do.
koy
koy habo do.
ri
iri
Iri koy habc do.

G. do?
bero
bero do?
habu
habu bero do?
koy
koy habu bero do?
aran
Aran koy habu bero do?

H. do.
kayna
kayna do.
habu
habu kayna do.
koy
koy habu kayna do.
iri
iri koy habu kayna do.
ha'a
Ha'a, iri koy habu kayna do.

I. koy?
a
a koy?
man
Man a koy?

J. do.
ro
faro
faro do.
koy
koy faro do.
a
A koy faro do.

K. do?
bero
bero do?
ri
fari
fari bero do?
koy
koy fari bero do?
a
A koy fari bero do?

L. do.
kayna
kayna do.
fari
fari kayna do.
koy
koy fari kayna do.
a
a koy fari kayna do.
ha'a
Ha'a, a koy fari kayna do.

M. koy?
i
i koy?
man
Man i koy?

N. do.
faro
faro do.
koy
koy faro do.
i
I koy faro do.

O. do?
bero
bero do?
fari
fari bero do?
koy
koy fari bero do?
i
I koy fari bero do?

P. do.
kayna
kayna do.
fari
fari kayna do.
koy
koy fari kayna do.
i
i koy fari kayna do.
ha'a
Ha'a, i koy fari kayna do.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Man ni koy bi?	A. 1. Where did you go yesterday?
2. Man aran koy bi?	2. Where did you go yesterday?
3. Man a koy bi?	3. Where did he/she go yesterday?
4. Man i koy bi?	4. Where did they go yesterday?
B. 1. Man Fatu koy bi?	B. 1. Where did Fatu go yesterday?
2. Man Bakari koy bi?	2. Where did Bakari go yesterday?
3. Man Yakuba koy bi?	3. Where did Yakuba go yesterday?
4. Man Abdu koy bi?	4. Where did Abdu go yesterday?
5. Man Maman koy bi?	5. Where did Maman go yesterday?
6. Man Amina koy bi?	6. Where did Amina go yesterday?

C. 1. Man ni koy bi?	C. 1. Where did you go yesterday?
Ay koy habo do.	I went to the market.
2. Man ni koy bi?	2. Where did you go yesterday?
Ay koy faro do.	I went to the field.
3. Man ni koy bi?	3. Where did you go yesterday?
Ay koy kwara do.	I went to the village.
D. 1. Man aran koy bi?	D. 1. Where did you go yesterday?
Iri koy habo do.	We went to the market.
2. Man aran koy bi?	2. Where did you go yesterday?
Iri koy faro do.	We went to the field.
3. Man aran koy bi?	3. Where did you go yesterday?
Iri koy kwara do.	We went to the village.
E. 1. Man Fatu koy bi?	E. 1. Where did Fatu go yesterday?
A koy habo do.	She went to the market.
2. Man Bakari koy bi?	2. Where did Bakari go yesterday?
A koy faro do.	He went to the field.
3. Man Yakuba koy bi?	3. Where did Yakuba go yesterday?
A koy kwara do.	He went to the village.
F. 1. Man Abdu nda Maman koy bi?	F. 1. Where did Abdu and Maman go yesterday?
I koy habo do.	They went to the market.
2. Man Maman nda Amina koy bi?	2. Where did Maman and Amina go yesterday?
I koy faro do.	They went to the field.
3. Man Amina nda Abdu koy bi?	3. Where did Amina and Abdu go yesterday?
I koy kwara do.	They went to the village.
G. 1. Ni koy habu bero do?	G. 1. Did you go to the big market?
2. Aran koy habu bero do?	2. Did you go to the big market?
3. A koy habu bero do?	3. Did he/she go to the big market?
4. I koy habu bero do?	4. Did they go to the big market?

H. 1. Ni koy fari bero do?	H. 1. Did you go to the big field?
2. Aran koy fari bero do?	2. Did you go to the big field?
3. A koy fari bero do?	3. Did he/she go to the big field?
4. I koy fari bero do?	4. Did they go to the big field?
I. 1. Ni koy habu kayna do?	I. 1. Did you go to the small market?
2. Aran koy habu kayna do?	2. Did you go to the small market?
3. A koy habu kayna do?	3. Did he/she go to the small market?
4. I koy habu kayna do?	4. Did they go to the small market?
J. 1. Ni koy fari kayna do?	J. 1. Did you go to the small field?
2. Aran koy fari kayna do?	2. Did you go to the small field?
3. A koy fari kayna do?	3. Did he/she go to the small field?
4. I koy fari kayna do?	4. Did they go to the small field?
K. 1. Ay koy habu bero do.	K. 1. I went to the big market.
2. Iri koy habu berc do.	2. We went to the big market.
3. A koy habu bero do.	3. He/She went to the big market.
4. I koy habu bero do.	4. They went to the big market.
L. 1. Ay koy fari bero do.	L. 1. I went to the big field.
2. Iri koy fari bero do.	2. We went to the big field.
3. A koy fari bero do.	3. He/She went to the big field.
4. I koy fari bero do.	4. They went to the big field.
M. 1. Ay koy habu kayna do.	M. 1. I went to the small market.
2. Iri koy habu kayna do.	2. We went to the small market.
3. A koy habu kayna do.	3. He/She went to the small market.
4. I koy habu kayna do.	4. They went to the small market.
N. 1. Ay koy fari kayna do.	N. 1. I went to the small field.
2. Iri koy fari kayna do.	2. We went to the small field.
3. A koy fari kayna do.	3. He/She went to the small field.
4. I koy fari kayna do.	4. They went to the small field.

O. 1. Ni koy habu bero do?	O. 1. Did you go to the big market?
2. Ni koy habu kayna do?	2. Did you go to the small market?
3. Ni koy fari bero do?	3. Did you go to the big field?
4. Ni koy fari kayna do?	4. Did you go to the small field?
P. 1. Aran koy habu bero do?	P. 1. Did you go to the big market?
2. Aran koy habu kayna do?	2. Did you go to the small market?
3. Aran koy fari bero do?	3. Did you go to the big field?
4. Aran koy fari kayna do?	4. Did you go to the small field?
Q. 1. A koy habu bero do?	Q. 1. Did he/she go to the big market?
2. A koy habu kayna do?	2. Did he/she go to the small market?
3. A koy fari bero do?	3. Did he/she go to the big field?
4. A koy fari kayna do?	4. Did he/she go to the small field?
R. 1. I koy habu bero do?	R. 1. Did they go to the big market?
2. I koy habu kayna do?	2. Did they go to the small market?
3. I koy fari bero do?	3. Did they go to the big field?
4. I koy fari kayna do?	4. Did they go to the small field?
S. 1. Ay koy habu bero do.	S. 1. I went to the big market.
2. Ay koy habu kayna do.	2. I went to the small market.
3. Ay koy fari bero do.	3. I went to the big field.
4. Ay koy fari kayna do.	4. I went to the small field.
T. 1. Iri koy habu bero do.	T. 1. We went to the big market.
2. Iri koy habu kayna do.	2. We went to the small market.
3. Iri koy fari bero do.	3. We went to the big field.
4. Iri koy fari kayna do.	4. We went to the small field.
U. 1. A koy habu bero do.	U. 1. He/She went to the big market.
2. A koy habu kayna do.	2. He/She went to the small market.
3. A koy fari bero do.	3. He/She went to the big field.
4. A koy fari kayna do.	4. He/She went to the small field.

V. 1. I koy habu bero do.	V. 1. They went to the big market.
2. I koy habu kayna do.	2. They went to the small market.
3. I koy fari bero do.	3. They went to the big field.
4. I koy fari kayna do.	4. They went to the small field.
W. 1. Ni koy habu bero do?	W. 1. Did you go to the big market?
Ha'a, ay koy habu kayna do.	No, I went to the small market.
2. Ni koy habu kayna do?	2. Did you go to the small market?
Ha'a, ay koy habu bero do.	No, I went to the big market.
3. Ni koy fari bero do?	3. Did you go to the big field?
Ha'a, ay koy fari kayna do.	No, I went to the small field.
4. Ni koy fari kayna do?	4. Did you go to the small field?
Ha'a, ay koy fari bero do.	No, I went to the big field.
X. 1. Aran koy habu bero do?	X. 1. Did you go to the big market?
Ha'a, iri koy habu kayna do.	No, we went to the small market.
2. Aran koy habu kayna do?	2. Did you go to the small market?
Ha'a, iri koy habu bero do.	No, we went to the big market.
3. Aran koy fari bero do?	3. Did you go to the big field?
Ha'a, iri koy fari kayna do.	No, we went to the small field.
4. Aran koy fari kayna do?	4. Did you go to the small field?
Ha'a, iri koy fari bero do.	No, we went to the big field.
Y. 1. Fatu koy habu bero do?	Y. 1. Did Fatu go to the big market?
Ha'a, a koy habu kayna do.	No, she went to the small market.
2. Bakari koy habu kayna do?	2. Did Bakari go to the small market?
Ha'a, a koy habu bero do.	No, he went to the big market.
3. Yakuba koy fari bero do?	3. Did Yakuba go to the big field?
Ha'a, a koy fari kayna do.	No, he went to the small field.
4. Abdu koy fari kayna do?	4. Did Abdu go to the small field?
Ha'a, a koy fari bero do.	No, he went to the big field.

Z. 1. Amina nda Fatu koy habu bero do?	Z. 1. Did Amina and Fatu go to the big market?
Ha'a, i koy habu kayna do.	No, they went to the small market.
2. Abdu nda Maman koy habu kayna do?	2. Did Abdu and Maman go to the small market?
Ha'a, i koy habu bero do.	No, they went to the big market.
3. Bakari nda Abdu koy fari bero do?	3. Did Bakari and Abdu go to the big field?
Ha'a, i koy fari kayna do.	No, they went to the small field.
4. Maman nda Yakuba koy fari kayna do?	4. Did Maman and Yakuba go to the small field?
Ha'a, i koy fari bero do.	No, they went to the big field.

UNIT 4

Dialogue 1

di	to see
ay	me
ra	in
A: Ni di ay faro ra?	A: Did you see me in the field?
ni	you (sg. object)
B: Ha'a, ay mana di ni.	B: No, I didn't see you.
A: Ni di Abdu?	A: Did you see Abdu?
a, ya	him/her
B: Oho, ay di ya.[1]	B: Yes, I saw him.
mo	too, also
A: Ni di Bakari mo?[2]	A: Did you see Bakari, too?
B: Oho. Ni mo[2] di ya?	B: Yes. Did you, too, see him?
A: Oho.	A: Yes.

Dialogue 2

iri	us
A: Aran di iri habo ra?	A: Did you see us in the market?
aran	you (pl. object)
B: Ha'a, iri mana di aran.	B: No, we didn't see you.
A: Aran di Fatu nda Amina?	A: Did you see Fatu and Amina?
ey, yey	them
B: Oho, iri di yey.[1]	B: Yes, we saw them.

A. Aran di Yakuba nda Maman mo?[2]	A: Did you see Yakuba and Maman, too?
B: Oho. Aran mo[2] di yey?	B: Yes. Did you, too, see them?
A: Oho.	A: Yes.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. *A* and *ay* become *ya* and *yey* following a word ending in *-i*.
2. *Mo* immediately follows the word it qualifies.

Phonology Drills

A.

ra?
faro
faro ra?
ay
ay faro ra?
di
di ay faro ra?
ni
Ni di ay faro ra?

B.

ni.
di
di ni.
mana
mana di ni.
ay
ay mana di ni.
ha'a
Ha'a, ay mana di ni.

C.

Abdu?
di
di Abdu?
ni
Ni di Abdu?

D.

ya.
di
di ya.
ay
ay di ya.
oho
Oho, ay di ya.

E.

mo?
Bakari
Bakari mo?
di
di Bakari mo?
ni
Ni di Bakari mo?

F.

ya?
di
di ya?
mo
mo di ya?
ni
Ni mo di ya?

G. ra?
habo
habo ra?
iri
iri habo ra?
di
di iri habo ra?
aran
Aran di iri habo ra?

H. aran.
di
di aran.
mana
mana di aran.
iri
iri mana di aran.
ha'a
Ha'a, iri mana di aran.

I. Amina?
nda
nda Amina?
Fatu
Fatu nda Amina?
di
di Fatu nda Amina?
aran
Aran di Fatu nda Amina?

J. yey.
di
di yey.
iri
iri di yey.
oho
Oho, iri di yey.

K. mo?
Maman
Maman mo?
nda
nda Maman mo?
Yakuba
Yakuba nda Maman mo?
di
di Yakuba nda Maman mo?
aran
Aran di Yakuba nda Maman mo?

L. yey?
di
di yey?
mo
mo di yey?
aran
Aran mo di yey?

Structural Drills

ay	'me'	iri	'us'
ni	'you (sg.)'	aran	'you (pl.)'
a, ya	'him/her'	ey, yey	'them'

A. 1. Ni di ay?	A. 1. Did you see me?
2. Ni di iri?	2. Did you see us?
3. Ni di ya?	3. Did you see him/her?
4. Ni di yey?	4. Did you see them?
B. 1. Aran di ay?	B. 1. Did you see me?
2. Aran di iri?	2. Did you see us?
3. Aran di ya?	3. Did you see him/her?
4. Aran di yey?	4. Did you see them?
C. 1. A di ay?	C. 1. Did he/she see me?
2. A di ni?	2. Did he/she see you?
3. A di ya?	3. Did he/she see him/her?
4. A di iri?	4. Did he/she see us?
5. A di aran?	5. Did he/she see you?
6. A di yey?	6. Did he/she see them?
D. 1. I di ay?	D. 1. Did they see me?
2. I di ni?	2. Did they see you?
3. I di ya?	3. Did they see him/her?
4. I di iri?	4. Did they see us?
5. I di aran?	5. Did they see you?
6. I di yey?	6. Did they see them?
E. 1. Oho, ay di ni.	E. 1. Yes, I saw you.
2. Oho, ay di ya.	2. Yes, I saw him/her.
3. Oho, ay di aran.	3. Yes, I saw you.
4. Oho, ay di yey.	4. Yes, I saw them.

F. 1. Oho, ni di ay.	F. 1. Yes, you saw me.
2. Oho, ni di ya.	2. Yes, you saw him/her.
3. Oho, ni di iri.	3. Yes, you saw us.
4. Oho, ni di yey.	4. Yes, you saw them.
G. 1. Oho, a di ay.	G. 1. Yes, he/she saw me.
2. Oho, a di ni.	2. Yes, he/she saw you.
3. Oho, a di ya.	3. Yes, he/she saw him/her.
4. Oho, a di iri.	4. Yes, he/she saw us.
5. Oho, a di aran.	5. Yes, he/she saw you.
6. Oho, a di yey.	6. Yes, he/she saw them.
H. 1. Oho, iri di ni.	H. 1. Yes, we saw you.
2. Oho, iri di ya.	2. Yes, we saw him/her.
3. Oho, iri di aran.	3. Yes, we saw you.
4. Oho, iri di yey.	4. Yes, we saw them.
I. 1. Oho, aran di ay.	I. 1. Yes, you saw me.
2. Oho, aran di ya.	2. Yes, you saw him/her.
3. Oho, aran di iri.	3. Yes, you saw us.
4. Oho, aran di yey.	4. Yes, you saw them.
J. 1. Oho, i di ay.	J. 1. Yes, they saw me.
2. Oho, i di ni.	2. Yes, they saw you.
3. Oho, i di ya.	3. Yes, they saw him/her.
4. Oho, i di iri.	4. Yes, they saw us.
5. Oho, i di aran.	5. Yes, they saw you.
6. Oho, i di yey.	6. Yes, they saw them.
K. 1. Ni di ay faro ra?	K. 1. Did you see me in the field?
2. A di ay faro ra?	2. Did he/she see me in the field?
3. Aran di ay faro ra?	3. Did you see me in the field?
4. I di ay faro ra?	4. Did they see me in the field?

L. 1. Mi di ya habo ra?	L. 1. Did you see him/her in the market?
2. A di ya habo ra?	2. Did he/she see him/her in the market?
3. Aran di ya habo ra?	3. Did you see him/her in the market?
4. I di ya habo ra?	4. Did they see him/her in the market?
M. 1. Mi di iri faro ra?	M. 1. Did you see us in the field?
2. A di iri faro ra?	2. Did he/she see us in the field?
3. Aran di iri faro ra?	3. Did you see us in the field?
4. I di iri faro ra?	4. Did they see us in the field?
N. 1. Mi di yey habo ra?	N. 1. Did you see them in the market?
2. A di yey habo ra?	2. Did he/she see them in the market?
3. Aran di yey habo ra?	3. Did you see them in the market?
4. I di yey habo ra?	4. Did they see them in the market?
O. 1. Mi di ay faro ra.	O. 1. You saw me in the field.
2. A di ay faro ra.	2. He/She saw me in the field.
3. Aran di ay faro ra.	3. You saw me in the field.
4. I di ay faro ra.	4. They saw me in the field.
P. 1. Ay di ni habo ra.	P. 1. I saw you in the market.
2. A di ni habo ra.	2. He/She saw you in the market.
3. Iri di ni habo ra.	3. We saw you in the market.
4. I di ni habo ra.	4. They saw you in the market.
Q. 1. Ay di ya faro ra.	Q. 1. I saw him/her in the field.
2. Mi di ya faro ra.	2. You saw him/her in the field.
3. A di ya faro ra.	3. He/She saw him/her in the field.
4. Iri di ya faro ra.	4. We saw him/her in the field.
5. Aran di ya faro ra.	5. You saw him/her in the field.
6. I di ya faro ra.	6. They saw him/her in the field.
R. 1. Mi di iri habo ra.	R. 1. You saw us in the market.
2. A di iri habo ra.	2. He/She saw us in the market.
3. Aran di iri habo ra.	3. You saw us in the market.
4. I di iri habo ra.	4. They saw us in the market.

S. 1. Ay di aran faro ra.	S. 1. I saw you in the field.
2. A di aran faro ra.	2. He/She saw you in the field.
3. Iri di aran faro ra.	3. We saw you in the field.
4. I di aran faro ra.	4. They saw you in the field.
T. 1. Ay di yey habo ra.	T. 1. I saw them in the market.
2. Ni di yey habo ra.	2. You saw them in the market.
3. A di yey habo ra.	3. He/She saw them in the market.
4. Iri di yey habo ra.	4. We saw them in the market.
5. Aran di yey habo ra.	5. You saw them in the market.
6. I di yey habo ra.	6. They saw them in the market.
U. 1. Ha'a, ay mana di ni.	U. 1. No, I didn't see you.
2. Ha'a, ay mana di ya.	2. No, I didn't see him/her.
3. Ha'a, ay mana di aran.	3. No, I didn't see you.
4. Ha'a, ay mana di yey.	4. No, I didn't see them.
V. 1. Ha'a, ni mana di ay.	V. 1. No, you didn't see me.
2. Ha'a, ni mana di ya.	2. No, you didn't see him/her.
3. Ha'a, ni mana di iri.	3. No, you didn't see us.
4. Ha'a, ni mana di yey.	4. No, you didn't see them.
W. 1. Ha'a, a mana di ay.	W. 1. No, he/she didn't see me.
2. Ha'a, a mana di ni.	2. No, he/she didn't see you.
3. Ha'a, a mana di ya.	3. No, he/she didn't see him/her.
4. Ha'a, a mana di iri.	4. No, he/she didn't see us.
5. Ha'a, a mana di aran.	5. No, he/she didn't see you.
6. Ha'a, a mana di yey.	6. No, he/she didn't see them.
X. 1. Ha'a, iri mana di ni.	X. 1. No, we didn't see you.
2. Ha'a, iri mana di ya.	2. No, we didn't see him/her.
3. Ha'a, iri mana di aran.	3. No, we didn't see you.
4. Ha'a, iri mana di yey.	4. No, we didn't see them.

Y. 1. Ha'a, aran mana di ay.	Y. 1. No, you didn't see me.
2. Ha'a, aran mana di ya.	2. No, you didn't see him/her.
3. Ha'a, aran mana di iri.	3. No, you didn't see us.
4. Ha'a, aran mana di yey.	4. No, you didn't see them.
Z. 1. Ha'a, i mana di ay.	Z. 1. No, they didn't see me.
2. Ha'a, i mana di ni.	2. No, they didn't see you.
3. Ha'a, i mana di ya.	3. No, they didn't see him/her.
4. Ha'a, i mana di iri.	4. No, they didn't see us.
5. Ha'a, i mana di aran.	5. No, they didn't see you.
6. Ha'a, i mana di yey.	6. No, they didn't see them.
AA. 1. Mi mana di ay faro ra.	AA. 1. You didn't see me in the field.
2. A mana di ay faro ra.	2. He/She didn't see me in the field.
3. Aran mana di ay faro ra.	3. You didn't see me in the field.
4. I mana di ay faro ra.	4. They didn't see me in the field.
BB. 1. Ay mana di ni habo ra.	BB. 1. I didn't see you in the market.
2. A mana di ni habo ra.	2. He/She didn't see you in the market.
3. Iri mana di ni habo ra.	3. We didn't see you in the market.
4. I mana di ni habo ra.	4. They didn't see you in the market.
CC. 1. Ay mana di ya faro ra.	CC. 1. I didn't see him/her in the field.
2. Mi mana di ya faro ra.	2. You didn't see him/her in the field.
3. A mana di ya faro ra.	3. He/She didn't see him/her in the field.
4. Iri mana di ya faro ra.	4. We didn't see him/her in the field.
5. Aran mana di ya faro ra.	5. You didn't see him/her in the field.
6. I mana di ya faro ra.	6. They didn't see him/her in the field.
DD. 1. Mi mana di iri habo ra.	DD. 1. You didn't see us in the market.
2. A mana di iri habo ra.	2. He/She didn't see us in the market.
3. Aran mana di iri habo ra.	3. You didn't see us in the market.
4. I mana di iri habo ra.	4. They didn't see us in the market.

EE. 1. Ay mana di aran faro ra.	EE. 1. I didn't see you in the field.
2. A mana di aran faro ra.	2. He/She didn't see you in the field.
3. Iri mana di aran faro ra.	3. We didn't see you in the field.
4. I mana di aran faro ra.	4. They didn't see you in the field.
FF. 1. Ay mana di yey habo ra.	FF. 1. I didn't see them in the market.
2. Ni mana di yey habo ra.	2. You didn't see them in the market.
3. A mana di yey habo ra.	3. He/She didn't see them in the market.
4. Iri mana di yey habo ra.	4. We didn't see them in the market.
5. Aran mana di yey habo ra.	5. You didn't see them in the market.
6. I mana di yey habo ra.	6. They didn't see them in the market.
GG. 1. Ni di Amina mo?	GG. 1. Did you see Amina, too?
2. A di Amina mo?	2. Did he/she see Amina, too?
3. Aran di Amina mo?	3. Did you see Amina, too?
4. I di Amina mo?	4. Did they see Amina, too?
HH. 1. Fatu di ay mo?	HH. 1. Did Fatu see me, too?
2. Fatu di ni mo?	2. Did Fatu see you, too?
3. Fatu di ya mo?	3. Did Fatu see him/her, too?
4. Fatu di iri mo?	4. Did Fatu see us, too?
5. Fatu di aran mo?	5. Did Fatu see you, too?
6. Fatu di yey mo?	6. Did Fatu see them, too?
II. 1. Abdu mo di ay?	II. 1. Did Abdu, too, see me?
2. Abdu mo di ni?	2. Did Abdu, too, see you?
3. Abdu mo di ya?	3. Did Abdu, too, see him/her?
4. Abdu mo di iri?	4. Did Abdu, too, see us?
5. Abdu mo di aran?	5. Did Abdu, too, see you?
6. Abdu mo di yey?	6. Did Abdu, too, see them?
JJ. 1. Ay di Fatu mo.	JJ. 1. I saw Fatu, too.
2. A di Fatu mo.	2. He/She saw Fatu, too.
3. Iri di Fatu mo.	3. We saw Fatu, too.
4. I di Fatu mo.	4. They saw Fatu, too.

KK. 1. Bakari di ay mo.	KK. 1. Bakari saw me, too.
2. Bakari di ni mo.	2. Bakari saw you, too.
3. Bakari di ya mo.	3. Bakari saw him/her, too.
4. Bakari di iri mo.	4. Bakari saw us, too.
5. Bakari di aran mo.	5. Bakari saw you, too.
6. Bakari di yey mo.	6. Bakari saw them, too.
LL. 1. Yakuba mo di ay.	LL. 1. Yakuba, too, saw me.
2. Yakuba mo di ni.	2. Yakuba, too, saw you.
3. Yakuba mo di ya.	3. Yakuba, too, saw him/her.
4. Yakuba mo di iri.	4. Yakuba, too, saw us.
5. Yakuba mo di aran.	5. Yakuba, too, saw you.
6. Yakuba mo di yey.	6. Yakuba, too, saw them.

UNIT 5

Dialogue 1

ga	(signals the Future)
suba	tomorrow
A: Man ni ga koy[1] suba?	A: Where are you going tomorrow?
Niamey[2]	Niamey
B: Ay ga koy Niamey.	B: I'm going to Niamey.
A: Abdu mo ga koy?	A: Is Abdu, too, going?
si	(signals the negative in the Present and Future)
B: Ha'a, a si koy.	B: No, he's not going.

Dialogue 2

A: Man Amina nda Fatu ga koy suba?	A: Where are Amina and Fatu going tomorrow?
B: I ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	B: They're going to the big market of Niamey.
A: Aran mo ga koy?	A: Are you, too, going?
B: Ha'a, iri si koy.	B: No, we're not going.

Dialogue 3

Tilaberi[3]	Tilaberi
A: Maman ga ka Tilaberi suba?	A: Is Maman coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
B: Oho, a ga ka.	B: Yes, he's coming.

A: Ni mo ga ka?	A: Are you, too, coming?
B: Ha'a, ay si ka.	B: No, I'm not coming.

Dialogue 4

A: Aran ga ka Tilaberi suba?	A: Are you coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
B: Oho, iri ga ka.	B: Yes, we're coming.
A: Yakuba nda Bakari mo ga ka?	A: Are Yakuba and Bakari, too, coming?
B: Ha'a, i si ka.	B: No, they're not coming.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. This tense, the Future, denotes intended action at an unspecified time in the future. Ga may also signal habitual action.
2. The capital city of Niger.
3. A town.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Man ni ga koy suba?	A. 1. Where are you going tomorrow?
2. Man a ga koy suba?	2. Where is he/she going tomorrow?
3. Man aran ga koy suba?	3. Where are you going tomorrow?
4. Man i ga koy suba?	4. Where are they going tomorrow?

B. 1. Man Abdu ga koy suba?	B. 1. Where is Abdu going tomorrow?
2. Man Amina ga koy suba?	2. Where is Amina going tomorrow?
3. Man Fatu ga koy suba?	3. Where is Fatu going tomorrow?
4. Man Maman ga koy suba?	4. Where is Maman going tomorrow?
5. Man Yakuba ga koy suba?	5. Where is Yakuba going tomorrow?
6. Man Bakari ga koy suba?	6. Where is Bakari going tomorrow?

C. 1. Man Amina nda Fatu ga koy suba?	C. 1. Where are Amina and Fatu going tomorrow?
2. Man Fatu nda Maman ga koy suba?	2. Where are Fatu and Maman going tomorrow?
3. Man Maman nda Yakuba ga koy suba?	3. Where are Maman and Yakuba going tomorrow?
4. Man Yakuba nda Bakari ga koy suba?	4. Where are Yakuba and Bakari going tomorrow?
D. 1. Ay ga koy Niamey.	D. 1. I'm going to Niamey.
2. A ga koy Niamey.	2. He's/She's going to Niamey.
3. Iri ga koy Niamey.	3. We're going to Niamey.
4. I ga koy Niamey.	4. They're going to Niamey.
E. 1. Ay ga koy Tilaberi.	E. 1. I'm going to Tilaberi.
2. A ga koy Tilaberi.	2. He's/She's going to Tilaberi.
3. Iri ga koy Tilaberi.	3. We're going to Tilaberi.
4. I ga koy Tilaberi.	4. They're going to Tilaberi.
F. 1. Abdu ga koy Niamey.	F. 1. Abdu is going to Niamey.
2. Amina ga koy Niamey.	2. Amina is going to Niamey.
3. Fatu ga koy Niamey.	3. Fatu is going to Niamey.
4. Maman ga koy Niamey.	4. Maman is going to Niamey.
5. Yakuba ga koy Niamey.	5. Yakuba is going to Niamey.
6. Bakari ga koy Niamey.	6. Bakari is going to Niamey.
G. 1. Abdu ga koy Tilaberi.	G. 1. Abdu is going to Tilaberi.
2. Amina ga koy Tilaberi.	2. Amina is going to Tilaberi.
3. Fatu ga koy Tilaberi.	3. Fatu is going to Tilaberi.
4. Maman ga koy Tilaberi.	4. Maman is going to Tilaberi.
5. Yakuba ga koy Tilaberi.	5. Yakuba is going to Tilaberi.
6. Bakari ga koy Tilaberi.	6. Bakari is going to Tilaberi.
H. 1. Ay ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	H. 1. I'm going to the big market of Niamey.
2. A ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	2. He's/She's going to the big market of Niamey.

3. Iri ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	3. We're going to the big market of Niamey.
4. I ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	4. They're going to the big market of Niamey.
I. 1. Ay ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	I. 1. I'm going to the big market of Tilaberi.
2. A ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	2. He's/She's going to the big market of Tilaberi.
3. Iri ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	3. We're going to the big market of Tilaberi.
4. I ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	4. They're going to the big market of Tilaberi.
J. 1. Abdu ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	J. 1. Abdu is going to the big market of Niamey.
2. Amina ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	2. Amina is going to the big market of Niamey.
3. Fatu ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	3. Fatu is going to the big market of Niamey.
4. Maman ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	4. Maman is going to the big market of Niamey.
5. Yakuba ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	5. Yakuba is going to the big market of Niamey.
6. Bakari ga koy Niamey habu bero do.	6. Bakari is going to the big market of Niamey.
K. 1. Abdu ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	K. 1. Abdu is going to the big market of Tilaberi.
2. Amina ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	2. Amina is going to the big market of Tilaberi.
3. Fatu ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	3. Fatu is going to the big market of Tilaberi.
4. Maman ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	4. Maman is going to the big market of Tilaberi.

5. Yakuba ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	5. Yakuba is going to the big market of Tilaberi.
6. Bakari ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.	6. Bakari is going to the big market of Tilaberi.
L. 1. Ni ga ka Tilaberi suba?	L. 1. Are you coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
2. A ga ka Tilaberi suba?	2. Is he/she coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
3. Aran ga ka Tilaberi suba?	3. Are you coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
4. I ga ka Tilaberi suba?	4. Are they coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
M. 1. Ni ga ka Niamey suba?	M. 1. Are you coming to Niamey tomorrow?
2. A ga ka Niamey suba?	2. Is he/she coming to Niamey tomorrow?
3. Aran ga ka Niamey suba?	3. Are you coming to Niamey tomorrow?
4. I ga ka Niamey suba?	4. Are they coming to Niamey tomorrow?
N. 1. Ni ga koy Tilaberi suba?	N. 1. Are you going to Tilaberi tomorrow?
2. A ga koy Tilaberi suba?	2. Is he/she going to Tilaberi tomorrow?
3. Aran ga koy Tilaberi suba?	3. Are you going to Tilaberi tomorrow?
4. I ga koy Tilaberi suba?	4. Are they going to Tilaberi tomorrow?
O. 1. Ni ga koy Niamey suba?	O. 1. Are you going to Niamey tomorrow?
2. A ga koy Niamey suba?	2. Is he/she going to Niamey tomorrow?

3. Aran ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Are you going to Niamey tomorrow?
4. I ga koy Niamey suba?	4. Are they going to Niamey tomorrow?
P. 1. Abdu ga ka Tilaberi suba?	P. 1. Is Abdu coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
2. Amina ga ka Tilaberi suba?	2. Is Amina coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
3. Fatu ga ka Tilaberi suba?	3. Is Fatu coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
4. Maman ga ka Tilaberi suba?	4. Is Maman coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
5. Yakuba ga ka Tilaberi suba?	5. Is Yakuba coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
6. Bakari ga ka Tilaberi suba?	6. Is Bakari coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?
Q. 1. Abdu ga koy Niamey suba?	Q. 1. Is Abdu going to Niamey tomorrow?
2. Amina ga koy Niamey suba?	2. Is Amina going to Niamey tomorrow?
3. Fatu ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is Fatu going to Niamey tomorrow?
4. Maman ga koy Niamey suba?	4. Is Maman going to Niamey tomorrow?
5. Yakuba ga koy Niamey suba?	5. Is Yakuba going to Niamey tomorrow?
6. Bakari ga koy Niamey suba?	6. Is Bakari going to Niamey tomorrow?
R. 1. Ni mo ga ka?	R. 1. Are you, too, coming?
2. A mo ga ka?	2. Is he/she, too, coming?
3. Aran mo ga ka?	3. Are you, too, coming?
4. I mo ga ka?	4. Are they, too, coming?

S. 1. Ni mo ga koy?	S. 1. Are you, too, going?
2. A mo ga koy?	2. Is he/she, too, going?
3. Aran mo ga koy?	3. Are you, too, going?
4. I mo ga koy?	4. Are they, too, going?
T. 1. Abdu nda Amina mo ga ka?	T. 1. Are Abdu and Amina, too, coming?
2. Amina nda Fatu mo ga ka?	2. Are Amina and Fatu, too, coming?
3. Fatu nda Maman mo ga ka?	3. Are Fatu and Maman, too, coming?
4. Maman nda Yakuba mo ga ka?	4. Are Maman and Yakuba, too, coming?
5. Yakuba nda Bakari mo ga ka?	5. Are Yakuba and Bakari, too, coming?
6. Bakari nda Abdu mo ga ka?	6. Are Bakari and Abdu, too, coming?
U. 1. Abdu nda Amina mo ga koy?	U. 1. Are Abdu and Amina, too, going?
2. Amina nda Fatu mo ga koy?	2. Are Amina and Fatu, too, going?
3. Fatu nda Maman mo ga koy?	3. Are Fatu and Maman, too, going?
4. Maman nda Yakuba mo ga koy?	4. Are Maman and Yakuba, too, going?
5. Yakuba nda Bakari mo ga koy?	5. Are Yakuba and Bakari, too, going?
6. Bakari nda Abdu mo ga koy?	6. Are Bakari and Abdu, too, going?
V. 1. Oho, ay ga ka.	V. 1. Yes, I'm coming.
2. Oho, a ga ka.	2. Yes, he's/she's coming.
3. Oho, iri ga ka.	3. Yes, we're coming.
4. Oho, i ga ka.	4. Yes, they're coming.
W. 1. Oho, ay ga koy.	W. 1. Yes, I'm going.
2. Oho, a ga koy.	2. Yes, he's/she's going.
3. Oho, iri ga koy.	3. Yes, we're going.
4. Oho, i ga koy.	4. Yes, they're going.
X. 1. Ha'a, ay si ka.	X. 1. No, I'm not coming.
2. Ha'a, a si ka.	2. No, he's/she's not coming.
3. Ha'a, iri si ka.	3. No, we're not coming.
4. Ha'a, i si ka.	4. No, they're not coming.

Y. 1. Ha'a, ay si koy.	Y. 1. No, I'm not going.
2. Ha'a, a si koy.	2. No, he's/she's not going.
3. Ha'a, iri si koy.	3. No, we're not going.
4. Ha'a, i si koy.	4. No, they're not going.

Phonology Drills

A. i ir	B. ir iri	C. i wi	D. ite idu	E. ini ina	F. isa iso
G. ifo iso	H. iso izo	I. bini bine	J. isa bisa	K. biyo biya	L. tyi di
M. tira dira	N. tyine dyine	O. tyiney dyiney	P. tini dini	Q. titi tita	R. titi tyimi
S. tyire dyiri	T. diya diraw	U. diya dyirbi	V. dyini hini	W. hima hina	X. hine hirey
Y. hina hino	Z. hino hiyo	AA. ni nina	BB. hin nin	CC. nina niger	DD. iri siri

UNIT 6

Dialogue 1

ni	your (sg.)
baba	father (indef.)
A: Ni baba[1] ga koy Niamey suba?	A: Is your father going to Niamey tomorrow?
ay	my
B: Oho, ay baba[1] ga koy Niamey suba.	B: Yes, my father is going to Niamey tomorrow.
nya	mother (indef.)
A: Ni nya[1] ga koy?	A: Is your mother going?
B: Ha'a, ay nya si koy.	B: No, my mother isn't going.

Dialogue 2

aran	your (pl.)
arme	brother of a female (def./indef.)
A: Aran arme[1] ga koy Tilaberi suba?	A: Is your brother going to Tilaberi tomorrow?
iri	our
B: Oho, iri arme[1] ga koy Tilaberi suba.	B: Yes, our brother is going to Tilaberi tomorrow.
woyme	sister of a male (def./indef.)
A: Aran woyme[1] ga koy?	A: Is your sister going?
B: Ha'a, iri woyme si koy.	B: No, our sister isn't going.

Dialogue 3

a	his/her
babo	father (def.)
hu'kuna	today
A: A babo[1] ga ka Niamey hu'kuna?	A: Is his father coming to Niamey today?
nyan'o	mother (def.)
B: Oho. A nyan'o[1] mo ga ka Niamey hu'kuna.	B: Yes. His mother, too, is coming to Niamey today.
A: A woyme[1] ga ka?	A: Is his sister coming?
B: Ha'a, a si ka.	B: No, she isn't coming.

Dialogue 4

i	their
A: I babo[1] ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	A: Is their father coming to Tilaberi today?
B: Oho. I nyan'o[1] mo ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	B: Yes. Their mother, too, is coming to Tilaberi today.
A: I arme[1] ga ka?	A: Is their sister coming?
B: Ha'a, a si ka.	B: No, she isn't coming.

Note on the Dialogues

1. Following a possessive pronoun, the noun takes the definite form. However, with "father" and "mother", ay, ni, iri, and aran take the indefinite baba and nya, whereas a and i take the definite babo and nyan'o. Like kwara, arme and woyme are identical in the definite and indefinite.

Structural Drills

ay	'my'	iri	'our'
ni	'your (sg.)'	aran	'your (pl.)'
a	'his/her'	i	'their'

A. 1. Ni baba ga koy?	A. 1. Is your father going?
2. Ni baba ga koy Niamey?	2. Is your father going to Niamey?
3. Ni baba ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is your father going to Niamey tomorrow?
B. 1. A babo ga koy?	B. 1. Is his/her father going?
2. A babo ga koy Niamey?	2. Is his/her father going to Niamey?
3. A babo ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is his/her father going to Niamey tomorrow?
C. 1. Aran baba ga koy?	C. 1. Is your father going?
2. Aran baba ga koy Niamey?	2. Is your father going to Niamey?
3. Aran baba ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is your father going to Niamey tomorrow?
D. 1. I babo ga koy?	D. 1. Is their father going?
2. I babo ga koy Niamey?	2. Is their father going to Niamey?
3. I babo ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is their father going to Niamey tomorrow?
E. 1. Ni nya ga koy?	E. 1. Is your mother going?
2. Ni nya ga koy Niamey?	2. Is your mother going to Niamey?
3. Ni nya ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is your mother going to Niamey tomorrow?

F. 1. A nyan'o ga koy?	F. 1. Is his/her mother going?
2. A nyan'o ga koy Niamey?	2. Is his/her mother going to Niamey?
3. A nyan'o ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is his/her mother going to Niamey tomorrow?
G. 1. Aran nya ga koy?	G. 1. Is your mother going?
2. Aran nya ga koy Niamey?	2. Is your mother going to Niamey?
3. Aran nya ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is your mother going to Niamey tomorrow?
H. 1. I nyan'o ga koy?	H. 1. Is their mother going?
2. I nyan'o ga koy Niamey?	2. Is their mother going to Niamey?
3. I nyan'o ga koy Niamey suba?	3. Is their mother going to Niamey tomorrow?
I. 1. Mi arme ga ka?	I. 1. Is your brother coming?
2. Mi arme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi?
3. Mi arme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi today?
J. 1. A arme ga ka?	J. 1. Is her brother coming?
2. A arme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is her brother coming to Tilaberi?
3. A arme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is her brother coming to Tilaberi today?
K. 1. Aran arme ga ka?	K. 1. Is your brother coming?
2. Aran arme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi?
3. Aran arme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi today?
L. 1. I arme ga ka?	L. 1. Is their brother coming?
2. I arme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is their brother coming to Tilaberi?
3. I arme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is their brother coming to Tilaberi today?

M. 1. Ni woyme ga ka?	M. 1. Is your sister coming?
2. Ni woyme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi?
3. Ni woyme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi today?
N. 1. A woyme ga ka?	N. 1. Is his sister coming?
2. A woyme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is his sister coming to Tilaberi?
3. A woyme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is his sister coming to Tilaberi today?
O. 1. Aran woyme ga ka?	O. 1. Is your sister coming?
2. Aran woyme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi?
3. Aran woyme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi today?
P. 1. I woyme ga ka?	P. 1. Is their sister coming?
2. I woyme ga ka Tilaberi?	2. Is their sister coming to Tilaberi?
3. I woyme ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?	3. Is their sister coming to Tilaberi today?
Q. 1. Oho, ay baba ga koy.	Q. 1. Yes, my father is going.
2. Oho, ay baba ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, my father is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, ay baba ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, my father is going to Niamey tomorrow.
R. 1. Oho, a babo ga koy.	R. 1. Yes, his/her father is going.
2. Oho, a babo ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, his/her father is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, a babo ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, his/her father is going to Niamey tomorrow.
S. 1. Oho, iri baba ga koy.	S. 1. Yes, our father is going.
2. Oho, iri baba ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, our father is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, iri baba ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, our father is going to Niamey tomorrow.

T. 1. Oho, i babo ga koy.	T. 1. Yes, their father is going.
2. Oho, i babo ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, their father is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, i babo ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, their father is going to Niamey tomorrow.
U. 1. Oho, ay nya ga koy.	U. 1. Yes, my mother is going.
2. Oho, ay nya ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, my mother is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, ay nya ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, my mother is going to Niamey tomorrow.
V. 1. Oho, a nyan'o ga koy.	V. 1. Yes, his/her mother is going.
2. Oho, a nyan'o ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, his/her mother is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, a nyan'o ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, his/her mother is going to Niamey tomorrow.
W. 1. Oho, iri nya ga koy.	W. 1. Yes, our mother is going.
2. Oho, iri nya ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, our mother is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, iri nya ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, our mother is going to Niamey tomorrow.
X. 1. Oho, i nyan'o ga koy.	X. 1. Yes, their mother is going.
2. Oho, i nyan'o ga koy Niamey.	2. Yes, their mother is going to Niamey.
3. Oho, i nyan'o ga koy Niamey suba.	3. Yes, their mother is going to Niamey tomorrow.
Y. 1. Ha'a, ay arme si ka.	Y. 1. No, my brother isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, ay arme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, my brother isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, ay arme si ka Tilaberi ha'kuna.	3. No, my brother isn't coming to Tilaberi today.

Z. 1. Ha'a, a arme si ka.	Z. 1. No, her brother isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, a arme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, her brother isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, a arme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, her brother isn't coming to Tilaberi today.
AA. 1. Ha'a, iri arme si ka.	AA. 1. No, our brother isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, iri arme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, our brother isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, iri arme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, our brother isn't coming to Tilaberi today.
BB. 1. Ha'a, i arme si ka.	BB. 1. No, their brother isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, i arme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, their brother isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, i arme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, their brother isn't coming to Tilaberi today.
CC. 1. Ha'a, ay woyme si ka.	CC. 1. No, my sister isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, ay woyme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, my sister isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, ay woyme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, my sister isn't coming to Tilaberi today.
DD. 1. Ha'a, a woyme si ka.	DD. 1. No, his sister isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, a woyme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, his sister isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, a woyme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, his sister isn't coming to Tilaberi today.
EE. 1. Ha'a, iri woyme si ka.	EE. 1. No, our sister isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, iri woyme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, our sister isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, iri woyme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, our sister isn't coming to Tilaberi today.

FF. 1. Ha'a, i woyme si ka.	FF. 1. No, their sister isn't coming.
2. Ha'a, i woyme si ka Tilaberi.	2. No, their sister isn't coming to Tilaberi.
3. Ha'a, i woyme si ka Tilaberi hu'kuna.	3. No, their sister isn't coming to Tilaberi today.
GG. 1. Ay nya mo ga ka Niamey hu'kuna.	GG. 1. My mother, too, is coming to Niamey today.
2. A nyan'o mo ga ka Niamey hu'kuna.	2. His/Her mother, too, is coming to Niamey today.
3. Iri nya mo ga ka Niamey hu'kuna.	3. Our mother, too, is coming to Niamey today.
4. I nyan'o mo ga ka Niamey hu'kuna.	4. Their mother, too, is coming to Niamey today.
HH. 1. Ay baba mo ga koy Tilaberi suba.	HH. 1. My father, too, is going to Tilaberi tomorrow.
2. A babo mo ga koy Tilaberi suba.	2. His/Her father, too, is going to Tilaberi tomorrow.
3. Iri baba mo ga koy Tilaberi suba.	3. Our father, too, is going to Tilaberi tomorrow.
4. I babo mo ga koy Tilaberi suba.	4. Their father, too, is going to Tilaberi tomorrow.

Phonology Drills

A. dyabi dyirbi

B. titi gati

C. gati gadi

D. kwayi gayi

E. tali Ali

F. ini hini

G. tini dini

H. bani kani

I. bini dyini

J. hayni doni

K. iri siri

L. beri feri

M. tyeri beri

N. hari fori

O. bori fori

P. bori zori

Q. kuri hari

R. tyire dyere

S. burtyin hintyin

T. feri Afrik

UNIT 7

Dialogue 1

A: Ni no wala?	A: Is it you?
B: Oho, ay no.	B: Yes, it's I.

Dialogue 2

A: Aran no wala?	A: Is it you?
B: Oho, iri no.	B: Yes, it's we.

Dialogue 3

A: Yakuba no wala?	A: Is it Yakuba?
i'ga	he/she (intensive form)
B: Oho, i'ga no.	B: Yes, it's he.

Dialogue 4

A: Amina nda Fatu no wala?	A: Is it Amina and Fatu?
i'gey	they (intensive form)
B: Oho, i'gey no.	B: Yes, it's they.

Dialogue 5

may	who
A: May no?	A: Who is it?
B: Ay arme no.	B: It's my brother.

ma	to call, name
A: Mate a ma?	A: What's his name?
B: A ma Maman.	B: His name is Maman.

Dialogue 6

A: May no?	A: Who is it?
B: Bakari no.	B: It's Bakari.
A: Mate a kwara ma?	A: What's the name of his village?
Filindye[1]	Filindye
B: A ma Filindye.	B: It's called Filindye.

Dialogue 7

A: Mate ni ma?	A: What's your name?
B: Ay ma Abdu.	B: My name is Abdu.
ga[2]	is/are/was/were/will be
beri	big (indef. sg.)
A: Ni kwara ga beri[3] wala?	A: Is your village big?
B: Ha'a, ay kwara ga kayna no.	B: No, my village is small.

Dialogue 8

A: Mate aran kwara ma?	A: What's the name of your village?
Doso[1]	Doso
B: A ma Doso.	B: It's called Doso.

A: Aran kwara ga kayna wala?	A: Is your village small?
B: Ha'a, iri kwara ga beri no.	B: No, our village is big.
A: Aran fuwo ga beri wala?	A: Is your house small?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. A town. The French spelling of Filindye, seen on maps and signs, is Filingué.
2. Followed by an adjective, ga signals the Present; however, with certain adverbs of time, it signals either the Past or the Future.
3. Following ga, the indefinite form of the adjective is used.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ay no.	A. 1. It's I.
2. Ni no.	2. It's you.
3. I'ga no.	3. It's he/she.
4. Iri no.	4. It's we.
5. Aran no.	5. It's you.
6. I'gey no.	6. It's they.
B. 1. Ni no wala?	B. 1. Is it you?
2. I'ga no wala?	2. Is it he/she?
3. Aran no wala?	3. Is it you?
4. I'gey no wala?	4. Is it they?
C. 1. Ni no wala? Oho, ay no.	C. 1. Is it you? Yes, it's I.
2. I'ga no wala? Oho, i'ga no.	2. Is it he/she? Yes, it's he/she.
3. Aran no wala? Oho, iri no.	3. Is it you? Yes, it's we.
4. I'gey no wala? Oho, i'gey no.	4. Is it they? Yes, it's they.

D. 1. May no? Bakari no.	D. 1. Who is it? It's Bakari.
2. May no? Yakuba no.	2. Who is it? It's Yakuba.
3. May no? Fatu no.	3. Who is it? It's Fatu.
4. May no? Abdu no.	4. Who is it? It's Abdu.
5. May no? Amina no.	5. Who is it? It's Amina.
6. May no? Maman no.	6. Who is it? It's Maman.
E. 1. Bakari no wala?	E. 1. Is it Bakari?
2. Yakuba no wala?	2. Is it Yakuba?
3. Fatu no wala?	3. Is it Fatu?
4. Abdu no wala?	4. Is it Abdu?
5. Amina no wala?	5. Is it Amina?
6. Maman no wala?	6. Is it Maman?
F. 1. Ay baba no.	F. 1. It's my father.
2. Ay nya no.	2. It's my mother.
3. Ay arme no.	3. It's my brother.
4. Ay woyme no.	4. It's my sister.
5. Ay faro no.	5. It's my field.
6. Ay kwara no.	6. It's my village.
7. Ay fuwo no.	7. It's my house.
G. 1. Mi baba no.	G. 1. It's your father.
2. Mi nya no.	2. It's your mother.
3. Mi arme no.	3. It's your brother.
4. Mi woyme no.	4. It's your sister.
5. Mi faro no.	5. It's your field.

6. Ni kwara no.	6. It's your village.
7. Ni fuwo no.	7. It's your house.
H. 1. A babo no.	H. 1. It's his/her father.
2. A nyan'o no.	2. It's his/her mother.
3. A arme no.	3. It's her brother.
4. A woyme no.	4. It's his sister.
5. A faro no.	5. It's his/her field.
6. A kwara no.	6. It's his/her village.
7. A fuwo no.	7. It's his/her house.
I. 1. Iri baba no.	I. 1. It's our father.
2. Iri nya no.	2. It's our mother.
3. Iri arme no.	3. It's our brother.
4. Iri woyme no.	4. It's our sister.
5. Iri faro no.	5. It's our field.
6. Iri kwara no.	6. It's our village.
7. Iri fuwo no.	7. It's our house.
J. 1. Aran babo no.	J. 1. It's your father.
2. Aran nya no.	2. It's your mother.
3. Aran arme no.	3. It's your brother.
4. Aran woyme no.	4. It's your sister.
5. Aran faro no.	5. It's your field.
6. Aran kwara no.	6. It's your village.
7. Aran fuwo no.	7. It's your house.
K. 1. I babo no.	K. 1. It's their father.
2. I nyan'o no.	2. It's their mother.
3. I arme no.	3. It's their brother.
4. I woyme no.	4. It's their sister.
5. I faro no.	5. It's their field.
6. I kwara no.	6. It's their village.
7. I fuwo no.	7. It's their house.

L. 1. Ay ma Fatu.	L. 1. My name is Fatu.
2. Ay ma Bakari.	2. My name is Bakari.
3. Ay ma Abdu.	3. My name is Abdu.
4. Ay ma Amina.	4. My name is Amina.
5. Ay ma Yakuba.	5. My name is Yakuba.
6. Ay ma Maman.	6. My name is Maman.
M. 1. A ma Fatu.	M. 1. Her name is Fatu.
2. A ma Bakari.	2. His name is Bakari.
3. A ma Abdu.	3. His name is Abdu.
4. A ma Amina.	4. Her name is Amina.
5. A ma Yakuba.	5. His name is Yakuba.
6. A ma Maman.	6. His name is Maman.
N. 1. Mate ni ma? Ay ma Fatu.	N. 1. What's your name? My name is Fatu.
2. Mate ni ma? Ay ma Bakari.	2. What's your name? My name is Bakari.
3. Mate ni ma? Ay ma Abdu.	3. What's your name? My name is Abdu.
4. Mate ni ma? Ay ma Amina.	4. What's your name? My name is Amina.
5. Mate ni ma? Ay ma Yakuba.	5. What's your name? My name is Yakuba.
6. Mate ni ma? Ay ma Maman.	6. What's your name? My name is Maman.
O. 1. Mate a ma? A ma Fatu.	O. 1. What's her name? Her name is Fatu.
2. Mate a ma? A ma Bakari.	2. What's his name? His name is Bakari.
3. Mate a ma? A ma Abdu.	3. What's his name? His name is Abdu.

4. Mate a ma?	4. What's her name?
A ma Amina.	Her name is Amina.
5. Mate a ma?	5. What's his name?
A ma Yakuba.	His name is Yakuba.
6. Mate a ma?	6. What's his name?
A ma Maman.	His name is Maman.
P. 1. Mate ni kwara ma?	P. 1. What's the name of your village?
2. Mate a kwara ma?	2. What's the name of his/her village?
3. Mate aran kwara ma?	3. What's the name of your village?
4. Mate i kwara ma?	4. What's the name of their village?
Q. 1. Ay kwara ma Tilaberi.	Q. 1. My village is called Tilaberi.
2. Ay kwara ma Filindye.	2. My village is called Filindye.
3. Ay kwara ma Doso.	3. My village is called Doso.
R. 1. A kwara ma Tilaberi.	R. 1. His/Her village is called Tilaberi.
2. A kwara ma Filindye.	2. His/Her village is called Filindye.
3. A kwara ma Doso.	3. His/Her village is called Doso.
S. 1. Iri kwara ma Tilaberi.	S. 1. Our village is called Tilaberi.
2. Iri kwara ma Filindye.	2. Our village is called Filindye.
3. Iri kwara ma Doso.	3. Our village is called Doso.
T. 1. I kwara ma Tilaberi.	T. 1. Their village is called Tilaberi.
2. I kwara ma Filindye.	2. Their village is called Filindye.
3. I kwara ma Doso.	3. Their village is called Doso.
U. 1. Mate ni kwara ma?	U. 1. What's the name of your village?
A ma Tilaberi.	It's called Tilaberi.
2. Mate a kwara ma?	2. What's the name of his/her village?
A ma Filindye.	It's called Filindye.

3. Mate aran kwara ma?	3. What's the name of your village?
A ma Doso.	It's called Doso.
4. Mate i kwara ma?	4. What's the name of their village?
A ma Filindye.	It's called Filindye.
V. 1. Mi kwara ga beri wala?	V. 1. Is your village big?
2. A kwara ga beri wala?	2. Is his/her village big?
3. Aran kwara ga beri wala?	3. Is your village big?
4. I kwara ga beri wala?	4. Is their village big?
W. 1. Mi fuwo ga kayna wala?	W. 1. Is your house small?
2. A fuwo ga kayna wala?	2. Is his/her house small?
3. Aran fuwo ga kayna wala?	3. Is your house small?
4. I fuwo ga kayna wala?	4. Is their house small?
X. 1. Ay kwara ga beri no.	X. 1. My village is big.
2. Mi kwara ga beri no.	2. Your village is big.
3. A kwara ga beri no.	3. His/Her village is big.
4. Iri kwara ga beri no.	4. Our village is big.
5. Aran kwara ga beri no.	5. Your village is big.
6. I kwara ga beri no.	6. Their village is big.
Y. 1. Ay fuwo ga kayna no.	Y. 1. My house is small.
2. Mi fuwo ga kayna no.	2. Your house is small.
3. A fuwo ga kayna no.	3. His/Her house is small.
4. Iri fuwo ga kayna no.	4. Our house is small.
5. Aran fuwo ga kayna no.	5. Your house is small.
6. I fuwo ga kayna no.	6. Their house is small.
Z. 1. Mi faro ga beri wala?	Z. 1. Is your field big?
Ha'a, ay faro ga kayna no.	No, my field is small.
2. Aran faro ga kayna wala?	2. Is your field small?
Ha'a, iri faro ga beri no.	No, our field is big.

3. A faro ga beri wala? Ha'a, a faro ga kayna no.	3. Is his/her field big? No, his/her field is small.
4. I faro ga kayna wala? Ha'a, i faro ga beri no.	4. Is their field small? No, their field is big.

Phonology Drills

A. te
de

B. te
tye

C. tye
tyew

D. me
ne

E. se
ye

F. tye
ye

G. beri
berey

H. berey
bero

I. teka
tera

J. feri
fema

K. ne
newo

L. seno
zenu

M. tyew
tyebe

N. tyebe
tyeme

O. tyeri
dyeri

P. tyere
dyeri

Q. tyele
tyela

UNIT 8

Dialogue 1

may	whose
A: May kwara no?	A: Whose village is it?
B: Ay kwara no.	B: It's my village.
A: Maman kwara mo no?	A: Is it Maman's village, too?
B: Oho, a kwara no.	B: Yes, it's his village.

Dialogue 2

A: May kwara no?	A: Whose village is it?
wone	(signals possession in the singular)
B: Ay wone no.	B: It's mine.
A: Maman wone mo no?	A: Is it Maman's, too?
B: Oho, a wone no.	B: Yes, it's his.

Dialogue 3

A: Aran fuwo no wala?	A: Is it your house?
manti	(signals the negative in the Present)
B: Ha'a, manti iri fuwo no.	B: No, it isn't our house.
A: Yakuba fuwo no wala?	A: Is it Yakuba's house?
B: Ha'a, manti a fuwo no.	B: No, it isn't his house.
A: Abdu nda Amina fuwo no wala?	A: Is it Abdu and Amina's house?
B: Oho, i fuwo no.	B: Yes, it's their house.

Dialogue 4

A: Aran fuwo no wala?	A: Is it your house?
B: Ha'a, manti iri wone no.	B: No, it isn't ours.
A: Yakuba wone no wala?	A: Is it Yakuba's?
B: Ha'a, manti a wone no.	B: No, it isn't his.
A: Abdu nda Amina wone no wala?	A: Is it Abdu and Amina's?
B: Oho, i wone no.	B: Yes, it's theirs.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ay wone no.	A. 1. It's mine.
2. Ni wone no.	2. It's yours.
3. A wone no.	3. It's his/hers.
4. Iri wone no.	4. It's ours.
5. Aran wone no.	5. It's yours.
6. I wone no.	6. It's theirs.

B. 1. May kwara no?	B. 1. Whose village is it?
Ay kwara no.	It's my village.
2. May kwara no?	2. Whose village is it?
Ay wone no.	It's mine.
3. May kwara no?	3. Whose village is it?
Maman kwara no.	It's Maman's village.
4. May kwara no?	4. Whose village is it?
Maman wone no.	It's Maman's.
5. May kwara no?	5. Whose village is it?
A kwara no.	It's his village.
6. May kwara no?	6. Whose village is it?
A wone no.	It's his.

C. 1. May kwara no?	C. 1. Whose village is it?
Iri kwara no.	It's our village.
2. May kwara no?	2. Whose village is it?
Iri wone no.	It's ours.
3. May kwara no?	3. Whose village is it?
Abdu nda Amina kwara no.	It's Abdu and Amina's village.
4. May kwara no?	4. Whose village is it?
Abdu nda Amina wone no.	It's Abdu and Amina's.
5. May kwara no?	5. Whose village is it?
I kwara no.	It's their village.
6. May kwara no?	6. Whose village is it?
I wone no.	It's theirs.
D. 1. Maman kwara mo no?	D. 1. Is it Maman's village, too?
2. Abdu kwara mo no?	2. Is it Abdu's village, too?
3. Amina kwara mo no?	3. Is it Amina's village, too?
4. Yakuba kwara mo no?	4. Is it Yakuba's village, too?
5. Bakari kwara mo no?	5. Is it Bakari's village, too?
6. Fatu kwara mo no?	6. Is it Fatu's village, too?
E. 1. Maman wone mo no?	E. 1. Is it Maman's, too?
2. Abdu wone mo no?	2. Is it Abdu's, too?
3. Amina wone mo no?	3. Is it Amina's, too?
4. Yakuba wone mo no?	4. Is it Yakuba's, too?
5. Bakari wone mo no?	5. Is it Bakari's, too?
6. Fatu wone mo no?	6. Is it Fatu's, too?
F. 1. Maman kwara mo no?	F. 1. Is it Maman's village, too?
Ha'a, Abdu wone no.	No, it's Abdu's.
2. Abdu kwara mo no?	2. Is it Abdu's village, too?
Ha'a, Amina wone no.	No, it's Amina's.

3. Amina kwara mo no?	3. Is it Amina's village, too?
Ha'a, Yakuba wone no.	No, it's Yakuba's.
4. Yakuba kwara mo no?	4. Is it Yakuba's village, too?
Ha'a, Bakari wone no.	No, it's Bakari's.
5. Bakari kwara mo no?	5. Is it Bakari's village, too?
Ha'a, Fatu wone no.	No, it's Fatu's.
6. Fatu kwara mo no?	6. Is it Fatu's village, too?
Ha'a, Maman wone no.	No, it's Maman's.
G. 1. Ni fuwo no wala?	G. 1. Is it your house?
2. A fuwo no wala?	2. Is it his/her house?
3. Aran fuwo no wala?	3. Is it your house?
4. I fuwo no wala?	4. Is it their house?
H. 1. Maman fuwo no wala?	H. 1. Is it Maman's house?
2. Abdu fuwo no wala?	2. Is it Abdu's house?
3. Amina fuwo no wala?	3. Is it Amina's house?
4. Yakuba fuwo no wala?	4. Is it Yakuba's house?
5. Bakari fuwo no wala?	5. Is it Bakari's house?
6. Fatu fuwo no wala?	6. Is it Fatu's house?
I. 1. Maman wone no wala?	I. 1. Is it Maman's?
2. Abdu wone no wala?	2. Is it Abdu's?
3. Amina wone no wala?	3. Is it Amina's?
4. Yakuba wone no wala?	4. Is it Yakuba's?
5. Bakari wone no wala?	5. Is it Bakari's?
6. Fatu wone no wala?	6. Is it Fatu's?
J. 1. Ni wone no wala?	J. 1. Is it yours?
2. A wone no wala?	2. Is it his/hers?
3. Aran wone no wala?	3. Is it yours?
4. I wone no wala?	4. Is it theirs?

K. 1. Ni wone no wala?	K. 1. Is it yours?
Ha'a, a wone no.	No, it's his/hers.
2. Aran wone no wala?	2. Is it yours?
Ha'a, i wone no.	No, it's theirs.
3. A wone no wala?	3. Is it his/hers?
Ha'a, ay wone no.	No, it's mine.
4. I wone no wala?	4. Is it theirs?
Ha'a, iri wone no.	No, it's ours.
L. 1. Manti Maman fuwo no.	L. 1. It isn't Maman's house.
2. Manti Abdu fuwo no.	2. It isn't Abdu's house.
3. Manti Amina fuwo no.	3. It isn't Amina's house.
4. Manti Yakuba fuwo no.	4. It isn't Yakuba's house.
5. Manti Bakari fuwo no.	5. It isn't Bakari's house.
6. Manti Fatu fuwo no.	6. It isn't Fatu's house.
M. 1. Manti Maman wone no.	M. 1. It isn't Maman's.
2. Manti Abdu wone no.	2. It isn't Abdu's.
3. Manti Amina wone no.	3. It isn't Amina's.
4. Manti Yakuba wone no.	4. It isn't Yakuba's.
5. Manti Bakari wone no.	5. It isn't Bakari's.
6. Manti Fatu wone no.	6. It isn't Fatu's.
N. 1. Manti ay fuwo no.	N. 1. It isn't my house.
2. Manti ni fuwo no.	2. It isn't your house.
3. Manti a fuwo no.	3. It isn't his/her house.
4. Manti iri fuwo no.	4. It isn't our house.
5. Manti aran fuwo no.	5. It isn't your house.
6. Manti i fuwo no.	6. It isn't their house.
O. 1. Manti ay wone no.	O. 1. It isn't mine.
2. Manti ni wone no.	2. It isn't yours.
3. Manti a wone no.	3. It isn't his/hers.
4. Manti iri wone no.	4. It isn't ours.
5. Manti aran wone no.	5. It isn't yours.
6. Manti i wone no.	6. It isn't theirs.

P. 1. Ni fuwo no wala? Ha'a, manti ay wone no.	P. 1. Is it your house? No, it isn't mine.
2. Aran faro no wala? Ha'a, manti iri wone no.	2. Is it your field? No, it isn't ours.
3. A kwara no wala? Ha'a, manti a wone no.	3. Is it his/her village? No, it isn't his/hers.
4. I fuwo no wala? Ha'a, manti i wone no.	4. Is it their village? No, it isn't theirs.
Q. 1. Maman fuwo no wala? Ha'a, manti a fuwo no.	Q. 1. Is it Maman's house? No, it isn't his house.
2. Abdu faro no wala? Ha'a, manti a faro no.	2. Is it Abdu's field? No, it isn't his field.
3. Amina kwara no wala? Ha'a, manti a kwara no.	3. Is it Amina's village? No, it isn't her village.
R. 1. Yakuba fuwo no wala? Ha'a, manti a wone no.	R. 1. Is it Yakuba's house? No, it isn't his.
2. Bakari faro no wala? Ha'a, manti a wone no.	2. Is it Bakari's field? No, it isn't his.
3. Fatu kwara no wala? Ha'a, manti a wone no.	3. Is it Fatu's village? No, it isn't hers.
S. 1. Maman nda Abdu fuwo no wala? Ha'a, manti i wone no.	S. 1. Is it Maman and Abdu's house? No, it isn't theirs.
2. Yakuba nda Amina faro no wala? Ha'a, manti i wone no.	2. Is it Yakuba and Amina's field? No, it isn't theirs.
3. Bakari nda Fatu kwara no wala? Ha'a, manti i wone no.	3. Is it Bakari and Fatu's village? No, it isn't theirs.

Phonology Drills

A. tyeme	B. ite	C. mate	D. goye	E. bine	F. wone
tyebe	wate	wate	yaye	hine	tyine
G. dure	H. tyele	I. tyebe	J. Niger	K. ey	L. ey
dole	nere	tyese	Zinder	dey	zey
M. berey	N. garey	O. darey	P. dyiney	Q. kurey	R. koyey
borey	darey	daley	Niamey	gorey	kwarey
S. gurdyey	T. mayrey	U. waney	V. foney	W. funey	X. hirey
sartyey	kwarey	foney	funey	fuwey	hayey

Y. hayey
habey

UNIT 9

Dialogue 1

A: Ni kani bani Abdu?	A: How are you, Abdu?
B: Bani samey. Ni kani bani?	B: Very well. How are you?
A: Bani samey. Man Bakari go?	A: Very well. Where's Bakari?
B: A go habo ra.	B: He's in the market.
A: Mate a go?	A: How is he?
B: A go bani samey.	B: He's very well.

Dialogue 2

A: Man Fatu nda Amina go?	A: Where are Fatu and Amina?
B: I go kwara ra.	B: They're in the village.
A: Mate i go?	A: How are they?
B: I go bani samey.	B: They're very well.

Dialogue 3

A: Fofo.	A: Hello.
B: Ngwoya.	B: Hello.
A: Mate ni go?	A: How are you?
B: Ay go bani samey.	B: I'm very well.

Dialogue 4

sanka	child (def./indef.)
A: Mate ni sanka go?	A: How's your child?
dya'te	sick (indef. sg.)
B: A ga dya'te.[1]	B: He's sick.
gumo	very
A: A ga dya'te gumo?	A: Is he very sick?
B: Ha'a, a si dya'te gumo.	B: No, he isn't very sick.

Dialogue 5

A: Kwara ga beri?[1]	A: Is the village big?
B: Ha'a, a si beri. A ga kayna gumo.	B: No, it isn't big. It's very small.
hanan	clean (def./indef. sg.)
A: A ga hanan?[1]	A: Is it clean?
B: Ha'a, a si hanan.	B: No, it isn't clean.
sibi	dirty (def./indef. sg.)
A ga sibi[1] gumo.	It's very dirty.

Dialogue 6

A: Fuwo ga kayna?	A: Is the house small?
B: Ha'a, a si kayna. A ga beri gumo.	B: No, it isn't small. It's very big.
A: A ga sibi?	A: Is it dirty?
B: Ha'a, a si sibi. A ga hanan gumo.	B: No, it isn't dirty. It's very clean.

Note on the Dialogues

1. Certain words, like dya'te, beri, kayna, hanan, and zibi, may function as either verbs or adjectives. Here they function as predicate adjectives, following ga or si. In such structures, these words take the indefinite form.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Man Bakari go?	A. 1. Where's Bakari?
2. Man Fatu go?	2. Where's Fatu?
3. Man Amina go?	3. Where's Amina?
4. Man Yakuba go?	4. Where's Yakuba?
5. Man Abdu go?	5. Where's Abdu?
6. Man Maman go?	6. Where's Maman?
B. 1. Man Bakari nda Fatu go?	B. 1. Where are Bakari and Fatu?
2. Man Fatu nda Amina go?	2. Where are Fatu and Amina?
3. Man Amina nda Yakuba go?	3. Where are Amina and Yakuba?
4. Man Yakuba nda Abdu go?	4. Where are Yakuba and Abdu?
5. Man Abdu nda Maman go?	5. Where are Abdu and Maman?
6. Man Maman nda Bakari go?	6. Where are Maman and Bakari?
C. 1. A go habo ra.	C. 1. He's/She's in the market.
2. A go kwara ra.	2. He's/She's in the village.
3. A go fuwo ra.	3. He's/She's in the house.
D. 1. I go habo ra.	D. 1. They're in the market.
2. I go kwara ra.	2. They're in the village.
3. I go fuwo ra.	3. They're in the house.
E. 1. Bakari go habo ra.	E. 1. Bakari is in the market.
2. Fatu go habo ra.	2. Fatu is in the market.
3. Amina go habo ra.	3. Amina is in the market.
4. Yakuba go habo ra.	4. Yakuba is in the market.
5. Abdu go habo ra.	5. Abdu is in the market.
6. Maman go habo ra.	6. Maman is in the market.

F. 1. Mate ni go?	F. 1. How are you?
2. Mate a go?	2. How is he/she?
3. Mate aran go?	3. How are you?
4. Mate i go?	4. How are they?
G. 1. Mate Bakari go?	G. 1. How's Bakari?
2. Mate Fatu go?	2. How's Fatu?
3. Mate Amina go?	3. How's Amina?
4. Mate Yakuba go?	4. How's Yakuba?
5. Mate Abdu go?	5. How's Abdu?
6. Mate Maman go?	6. How's Maman?
H. 1. Mate ni sanka go?	H. 1. How's your child?
2. Mate a sanka go?	2. How's his/her child?
3. Mate aran sanka go?	3. How's your child?
4. Mate i sanka go?	4. How's their child?
I. 1. Mate ni sanka go?	I. 1. How's your child?
2. Mate ni baba go?	2. How's your father?
3. Mate ni nya go?	3. How's your mother?
4. Mate ni arme go?	4. How's your brother?
5. Mate ni woyme go?	5. How's your sister?
J. 1. Mate aran sanka go?	J. 1. How's your child?
2. Mate aran baba go?	2. How's your father?
3. Mate aran nya go?	3. How's your mother?
4. Mate aran arme go?	4. How's your brother?
5. Mate aran woyme go?	5. How's your sister?
K. 1. Ay go bani samey.	K. 1. I'm very well.
2. A go bani samey.	2. He's/She's very well.
3. Iri go bani samey.	3. We're very well.
4. I go bani samey.	4. They're very well.

L. 1. Bakari go bani samey.	L. 1. Bakari is very well.
2. Fatu go bani samey.	2. Fatu is very well.
3. Amina go bani samey.	3. Amina is very well.
4. Yakuba go bani samey.	4. Yakuba is very well.
5. Abdu go bani samey.	5. Abdu is very well.
6. Maman go bani samey.	6. Maman is very well.
M. 1. Ni ga dya'te?	M. 1. Are you sick?
2. A ga dya'te?	2. Is he/she sick?
3. Aran ga dya'te?	3. Are you sick?
4. I ga dya'te?	4. Are they sick?
N. 1. Ni ga dya'te gumo?	N. 1. Are you very sick?
2. A ga dya'te gumo?	2. Is he/she very sick?
3. Aran ga dya'te gumo?	3. Are you very sick?
4. I ga dya'te gumo?	4. Are they very sick?
O. 1. Ay ga dya'te.	O. 1. I'm sick.
2. A ga dya'te.	2. He's/She's sick.
3. Iri ga dya'te.	3. We're sick.
4. I ga dya'te.	4. They're sick.
P. 1. Ay si dya'te gumo.	P. 1. I'm not very sick.
2. A si dya'te gumo.	2. He's/She's not very sick.
3. Iri si dya'te gumo.	3. We're not very sick.
4. I si dya'te gumo.	4. They're not very sick.
Q. 1. Bakari ga dya'te.	Q. 1. Bakari is sick.
2. Fatu ga dya'te.	2. Fatu is sick.
3. Amina ga dya'te.	3. Amina is sick.
4. Yakuba ga dya'te.	4. Yakuba is sick.
5. Abdu ga dya'te.	5. Abdu is sick.
6. Maman ga dya'te.	6. Maman is sick.

R. 1. Bakari si dya'te gumo.	R. 1. Bakari isn't very sick.
2. Fatu si dya'te gumo.	2. Fatu isn't very sick.
3. Amina si dya'te gumo.	3. Amina isn't very sick.
4. Yakuba si dya'te gumo.	4. Yakuba isn't very sick.
5. Abdu si dya'te gumo.	5. Abdu isn't very sick.
6. Maman si dya'te gumo.	6. Maman isn't very sick.
S. 1. Ni sanka ga dya'te? A si dya'te. A go bani samey.	S. 1. Is your child sick? He/She isn't sick. He's/She's very well.
2. Aran baba ga dya'te? A si dya'te. A go bani samey.	2. Is your father sick? He isn't sick. He's very well.
3. A nyan'o ga dya'te? A si dya'te. A go bani samey.	3. Is his/her mother sick? She isn't sick. She's very well.
4. I arme ga dya'te? A si dya'te. A go bani samey.	4. Is their brother sick? He isn't sick. He's very well.
T. 1. Kwara ga beri?	T. 1. Is the village big?
2. Fuwo ga beri?	2. Is the house big?
3. Habo ga beri?	3. Is the market big?
4. Faro ga beri?	4. Is the field big?
U. 1. Kwara ga kayna?	U. 1. Is the village small?
2. Fuwo ga kayna?	2. Is the house small?
3. Habo ga kayna?	3. Is the market small?
4. Faro ga kayna?	4. Is the field small?
V. 1. Kwara ga hanan?	V. 1. Is the village clean?
2. Fuwo ga hanan?	2. Is the house clean?
3. Habo ga hanan?	3. Is the market clean?
4. Faro ga hanan?	4. Is the field clean?
W. 1. Kwara ga zibi?	W. 1. Is the village dirty?
2. Fuwo ga zibi?	2. Is the house dirty?
3. Habo ga zibi?	3. Is the market dirty?
4. Faro ga zibi?	4. Is the field dirty?

X. 1. Kwara si beri gume.	X. 1. The village isn't very big.
2. Fuwo si beri gumo.	2. The house isn't very big.
3. Habo si beri gumo.	3. The market isn't very big.
4. Faro si beri gumo.	4. The field isn't very big.
Y. 1. Kwara si kayna gumo.	Y. 1. The village isn't very small.
2. Fuwo si kayna gumo.	2. The house isn't very small.
3. Habe si kayna gumo.	3. The market isn't very small.
4. Faro si kayna gumo.	4. The field isn't very small.
Z. 1. Kwara si hanan gumo.	Z. 1. The village isn't very clean.
2. Fuwo si hanan gumo.	2. The house isn't very clean.
3. Habo si hanan gumo.	3. The market isn't very clean.
4. Faro si hanan gumo.	4. The field isn't very clean.
AA. 1. Kwara si zibi gumo.	AA. 1. The village isn't very dirty.
2. Fuwo si zibi gume.	2. The house isn't very dirty.
3. Habo si zibi gumo.	3. The market isn't very dirty.
4. Faro si zibi gumo.	4. The field isn't very dirty.
BB. 1. Kwara ga beri? Ha'a, a si beri. A ga kayna gumo.	BB. 1. Is the village big? No, it isn't big. It's very small.
2. Kwara ga kayna? Ha'a, a si kayna. A ga beri gumo.	2. Is the village small? No, it isn't small. It's very big.
3. Fuwe ga hanan? Ha'a, a si hanan. A ga zibi gumo.	3. Is the house clean? No, it isn't clean. It's very dirty.
4. Fuwo ga zibi? Ha'a, a si zibi. A ga hanan gumo.	4. Is the house dirty? No, it isn't dirty. It's very clean.

Phonology Drills

A. a
ha

B. a
ba

C. ta
da

D. ka
ga

E. ha
ka

F. ga
ha

G. sa
za

H. ma
na

I. ha
ha'

J. ha'
man

K. man
nan

L. ban
man

M. na
nya

N. kar
sar

O. hal
han

P. Afrik
Ali

Q. Ali
Albay

R. Albay
aran

S. babay
bani

T. taba
tata

U. tali
talka

V. tali
tare

W. tare
darey

X. darey
daley

Y. dabu
dama

Z. dama
dara

UNIT 10

Dialogue 1

go'da	to have
wa'de	wife (indef.)
A: Abdu go'da wa'de?	A: Does Abdu have a wife?
B: Oho, a go'da wa'de.	B: Yes, he has a wife.
A: May no?	A: Who is it?
B: Fatu no.	B: It's Fatu.
A: I go'da zanka?	A: Do they have a child?
B: Oho, i go'da zanka. A ma Yakuba.	B: Yes, they have a child. His name is Yakuba.
A: A go'da bani?	A: Is he well?
si'da	to not have
B: Ha'a, a si'da bani. A ga dya'te.	B: No, he isn't well. He's sick.

Dialogue 2

A: Ni go'da wa'de?	A: Do you have a wife?
B: Oho, ay go'da wa'de.	B: Yes, I have a wife.
A: Ni go'da zanka?	A: Do you have a child?
B: Ha'a, ay si'da zanka.	B: No, I don't have a child.
A: Man ni wa'de go?	A: Where is your wife?

B: A go kwara ra.	B: She's in the village.
fu	house (indef.)
A: Ni go'da fu beri?[1]	A: Do you have a big house?
B: Ha'a, a ga kayna.	B: No, it's small.

Dialogue 3

A: Maman go'da fu beri?	A: Does Maman have a big house?
B: Ha'a, a go'da fu kayna.	B: No, he has a small house.
bori	pretty, good (indef. sg.)
A: A ga bori?	A: Is it pretty?
B: Ha'a, a ga zibi.	B: No, it's dirty.

Dialogue 4

A: Aran kwara ga bori?	A: Is your village pretty?
B: Oho. A ga bori. A si zibi.	B: Yes. It's pretty. It isn't dirty.

Note on the Dialogues

1. In expressions which are distinctly indefinite in meaning, both the noun and its adjective take the indefinite form.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni go'da zanka?	A. 1. Do you have a child?
2. Ni go'da wa'de?	2. Do you have a wife?
3. Ni go'da arme?	3. Do you have a brother?
4. Ni go'da weyme?	4. Do you have a sister?

B. 1. Aran go'da zanka?	B. 1. Do you have a child?
2. Aran go'da arme?	2. Do you have a brother?
3. Aran go'da woyme?	3. Do you have a sister?
C. 1. A go'da zanka?	C. 1. Does he/she have a child?
2. A go'da wa'de?	2. Does he have a wife?
3. A go'da arme?	3. Does she have a brother?
4. A go'da woyme?	4. Does he have a sister?
D. 1. I go'da zanka?	D. 1. Do they have a child?
2. I go'da arme?	2. Do they have a brother?
3. I go'da woyme?	3. Do they have a sister?
E. 1. Abdu go'da wa'de?	E. 1. Does Abdu have a wife?
2. Maman go'da wa'de?	2. Does Maman have a wife?
3. Bakari go'da wa'de?	3. Does Bakari have a wife?
4. Yakuba go'da wa'de?	4. Does Yakuba have a wife?
F. 1. Abdu go'da zanka?	F. 1. Does Abdu have a child?
2. Maman go'da zanka?	2. Does Maman have a child?
3. Bakari go'da zanka?	3. Does Bakari have a child?
4. Yakuba go'da zanka?	4. Does Yakuba have a child?
5. Amina go'da zanka?	5. Does Amina have a child?
6. Fatu go'da zanka?	6. Does Fatu have a child?
G. 1. Ay go'da wa'de.	G. 1. I have a wife.
2. Ay go'da zanka.	2. I have a child.
3. Ay go'da arme.	3. I have a brother.
4. Ay go'da woyme.	4. I have a sister.
H. 1. Iri go'da zanka.	H. 1. We have a child.
2. Iri go'da arme.	2. We have a brother.
3. Iri go'da woyme.	3. We have a sister.

I. 1. A go'da wa'de.	I. 1. He has a wife.
2. A go'da zanka.	2. He/She has a child.
3. A go'da arme.	3. She has a brother.
4. A go'da woyme.	4. He has a sister.
J. 1. I go'da zanka.	J. 1. They have a child.
2. I go'da arme.	2. They have a brother.
3. I go'da woyme.	3. They have a sister.
K. 1. Ay si'da wa'de.	K. 1. I don't have a wife.
2. Ay si'da zanka.	2. I don't have a child.
3. Ay si'da arme.	3. I don't have a brother.
4. Ay si'da woyme.	4. I don't have a sister.
L. 1. Iri si'da zanka.	L. 1. We don't have a child.
2. Iri si'da arme.	2. We don't have a brother.
3. Iri si'da woyme.	3. We don't have a sister.
M. 1. A si'da wa'de.	M. 1. He doesn't have a wife.
2. A si'da zanka.	2. He/She doesn't have a child.
3. A si'da arme.	3. She doesn't have a brother.
4. A si'da woyme.	4. He doesn't have a sister.
N. 1. I si'da zanka.	N. 1. They don't have a child.
2. I si'da arme.	2. They don't have a brother.
3. I si'da woyme.	3. They don't have a sister.
O. 1. Abdu go'da wa'de.	O. 1. Abdu has a wife.
2. Maman go'da wa'de.	2. Maman has a wife.
3. Bakari go'da wa'de.	3. Bakari has a wife.
4. Yakuba go'da wa'de.	4. Yakuba has a wife.

P. 1. Abdu go'da sanka.	P. 1. Abdu has a child.
2. Maman go'da sanka.	2. Maman has a child.
3. Bakari go'da sanka.	3. Bakari has a child.
4. Yakuba go'da sanka.	4. Yakuba has a child.
5. Amina go'da sanka.	5. Amina has a child.
6. Fatu go'da sanka.	6. Fatu has a child.
Q. 1. Abdu si'da wa'de.	Q. 1. Abdu doesn't have a wife.
2. Maman si'da wa'de.	2. Maman doesn't have a wife.
3. Bakari si'da wa'de.	3. Bakari doesn't have a wife.
4. Yakuba si'da wa'de.	4. Yakuba doesn't have a wife.
R. 1. Abdu si'da sanka.	R. 1. Abdu doesn't have a child.
2. Maman si'da sanka.	2. Maman doesn't have a child.
3. Bakari si'da sanka.	3. Bakari doesn't have a child.
4. Yakuba si'da sanka.	4. Yakuba doesn't have a child.
5. Amina si'da sanka.	5. Amina doesn't have a child.
6. Fatu si'da sanka.	6. Fatu doesn't have a child.
S. 1. Ni go'da bani?	S. 1. How are you?
2. A go'da bani?	2. How is he/she?
3. Aran go'da bani?	3. How are you?
4. I go'da bani?	4. How are they?
T. 1. Abdu go'da bani?	T. 1. How is Abdu?
2. Maman go'da bani?	2. How is Maman?
3. Bakari go'da bani?	3. How is Bakari?
4. Yakuba go'da bani?	4. How is Yakuba?
5. Amina go'da bani?	5. How is Amina?
6. Fatu go'da bani?	6. How is Fatu?
U. 1. Ay go'da bani.	U. 1. I'm well.
2. A go'da bani.	2. He's/She's well.
3. Iri go'da bani.	3. We're well.
4. I go'da bani.	4. They're well.

V. 1. Ay si'da bani.	V. 1. I'm not well.
2. A si'da bani.	2. He's/She's not well.
3. Iri si'da bani.	3. We're not well.
4. I si'da bani.	4. They're not well.
W. 1. Abdu go'da bani.	W. 1. Abdu is well.
2. Maman go'da bani.	2. Maman is well.
3. Bakari go'da bani.	3. Bakari is well.
4. Yakuba go'da bani.	4. Yakuba is well.
5. Amina go'da bani.	5. Amina is well.
6. Fatu go'da bani.	6. Fatu is well.
X. 1. Abdu si'da bani.	X. 1. Abdu isn't well.
2. Maman si'da bani.	2. Maman isn't well.
3. Bakari si'da bani.	3. Bakari isn't well.
4. Yakuba si'da bani.	4. Yakuba isn't well.
5. Amina si'da bani.	5. Amina isn't well.
6. Fatu si'da bani.	6. Fatu isn't well.
Y. 1. Ni go'da fu beri?	Y. 1. Do you have a big house?
2. A go'da fu beri?	2. Does he/she have a big house?
3. Aran go'da fu beri?	3. Do you have a big house?
4. I go'da fu beri?	4. Do they have a big house?
Z. 1. Ni go'da fu beri? Ha'a, ay si'da fu beri. Ay go'da fu kayna.	Z. 1. Do you have a big house? No, I don't have a big house. I have a small house.
2. Aran go'da fari kayna? Ha'a, iri si'da fari kayna. Iri go'da fari beri.	2. Do you have a small field? No, we don't have a small field. We have a big field.
3. A go'da fu kayna? Ha'a, a si'da fu kayna. A go'da fu beri.	3. Does he/she have a small house? No, he/she doesn't have a small house. He/She has a big house.
4. I go'da fari beri? Ha'a, i si'da fari beri. I go'da fari kayna.	4. Do they have a big field? No, they don't have a big field. They have a small field.

AA. 1. Ni kwara ga bori? Oho, a ga bori. A si zibi.	AA. 1. Is your village pretty? Yes, it's pretty. It isn't dirty.
2. Aran kwara ga bori? Ha'a, a si bori. A ga zibi.	2. Is your village pretty? No, it isn't pretty. It's dirty.
3. A kwara ga bori? Oho, a ga bori. A si zibi.	3. Is his/her village pretty? Yes, it's pretty. It isn't dirty.
4. I kwara ga bori? Ha'a, a si bori. A ga zibi.	4. Is their village pretty? No, it isn't pretty. It's dirty.

Phonology Drills

A. kala	B. gadi	C. gadi	D. kwarey	E. sadyi	F. safun
kani	gayi	gani	kwara	sadyaw	sartyey
G. safun	H. dyabi	I. faba	J. fata	K. mate	L. marga
sama	dyara	fata	farka	marga	margu
M. dyabi	N. habey	O. habey	P. hanan	Q. hari	R. hare
dyase	habu	haggoy	hanno	hare	hala
S. labo	T. labo	U. wate	V. wasi	W. Yaye	
labu	rabi	waney	wasu	yara	

UNIT 11

Dialogue 1

fe	which, what
ga ti	(signals equivalence between expressions)
A: Fu fo ga ti ni wone?	A: Which house is yours?
wone[1]	this one here/that one there
B: Wone ga ti ay wone.	B: That's (This is) mine.
zankey[2]	children (def./indef.)
ne[3]	it is/here is/there is/they are/here are/there are
A: Ni zankey ne?[1]	A: Are those (these) children yours?
B: Ha'a, Amina zankey no.	B: No, they're Amina's children.
ya'	(signals the indefinite plural)
woney	(signals possession in the plural)
Wone ya' ga ti ay woney.	These (those) are mine.

Dialogue 2

A: Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?	A: Which houses are yours?
B: Wone ya' ga ti iri woney?	B: Those (These) are ours.
A: Aran zankey ne?[1]	A: Are those (these) children yours?
B: Ha'a, Fatu nda Bakari zankey no. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.	B: No, they're Fatu and Bakari's children. These (Those) are ours.

Dialogue 3

A: Kwara fo ga ti Abdu wone?	A: Which village is Abdu's?
B: Wone ga ti a wone.	B: That's (This is) his.
farey[2]	fields (def.)
A: A farey ne?[1]	A: Are those (these) fields his?
B: Ha'a, Maman farey no. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu woney.	B: No, they're Maman's fields. These (Those) are Abdu's.

Dialogue 4

A: Kwara fo ya' ga ti Bakari nda Yakuba woney?	A: Which villages are Bakari and Yakuba's?
B: Wone ya' ga ti i woney.	B: Those (These) are theirs.
A: I farey ne?[1]	A: Are those (these) fields theirs?
B: Ha'a, Abdu nda Maman farey no. Wone ya' ga ti Bakari nda Yakuba woney.	B: No, they're Abdu and Maman's fields. These (Those) are Bakari and Yakuba's.

Dialogue 5

A: Ni zanka ne?[1]	A: Is that (this) your child?
B: Ha'a, Fatu zanka no. Wone ga ti ay wone.	B: No, it's Fatu's child. This (That) is mine.

Dialogue 6

newo	right here
A: Ni zanka no newo?	A: Is this one right here your child?
B: Ha'a, Amina zanka no.	B: No, it's Amina's child.
yo'go	right over there, yonder
wono[4]	this/that one
Yo'go wono ga ti ay wone.	That one right over there is mine.

Dialogue 7

habey	markets (def.)
A: Aran habey no newo?	A: Are these right here your markets?
B: Ha'a, Maman nda Yakuba habey no.	B: No, they're Maman and Yakuba's markets.
woney[4]	these/those ones
Yo'go woney ga ti iri woney.	Those right over there are ours.

Dialogue 8

fuwey	houses (def.)
A: Bakari fuwey no newo?	A: Are these right here Bakari's houses?
B: Ha'a, Maman fuwey no. Yo'go woney ga ti Bakari woney.	B: No, they're Maman's houses. Those right over there are Bakari's.

Dialogue 9

A: Abdu nda Bakari kwarey no newo?	A: Are these right here Abdu and Bakari's villages?
B: Ha'a, Yakuba nda Maman kwarey no. Yo'go woney ga ti Abdu nda Bakari woney.	B: No, they're Yakuba and Maman's villages. Those right over there are Abdu and Bakari's.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. In Djerma, the distinction between "this" and "that" and between "these" and "those" is often made by gesture. In situations demanding precision, newo and yo'go are used.
2. As indicated in a previous unit, nouns and adjectives have definite and indefinite forms in the plural as well as the singular. These are definite forms.
3. Used in place of no in some Present structures, especially when the object is clearly visible.
4. Wono, a less definite form of wone, is used when location is denoted by an adverb. Woney is the plural form of wono.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Fu fo ga ti ni wone?	A. 1. Which house is yours?
2. Fu fo ga ti aran wone?	2. Which house is yours?
3. Fu fo ga ti a wone?	3. Which house is his/hers?
4. Fu fo ga ti i wone?	4. Which house is theirs?
B. 1. Fu fo ya' ga ti ni woney?	B. 1. Which houses are yours?
2. Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?	2. Which houses are yours?
3. Fu fo ya' ga ti a woney?	3. Which houses are his/hers?
4. Fu fo ya' ga ti i woney?	4. Which houses are theirs?
C. 1. Fu fo ga ti Abdu wone?	C. 1. Which house is Abdu's?
2. Fu fo ga ti Fatu wone?	2. Which house is Fatu's?
3. Fu fo ga ti Bakari wone?	3. Which house is Bakari's?
4. Fu fo ga ti Maman wone?	4. Which house is Maman's?
5. Fu fo ga ti Amina wone?	5. Which house is Amina's?
6. Fu fo ga ti Yakuba wone?	6. Which house is Yakuba's?
D. 1. Fu fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Fatu woney?	D. 1. Which houses are Abdu and Fatu's?
2. Fu fo ya' ga ti Fatu nda Bakari woney?	2. Which houses are Fatu and Bakari's?

3. Fu fo ya' ga ti Bakari nda Maman woney?	3. Which houses are Bakari and Maman's?
4. Fu fo ya' ga ti Maman nda Amina woney?	4. Which houses are Maman and Amina's?
5. Fu fo ya' ga ti Amina nda Yakuba woney?	5. Which houses are Amina and Yakuba's?
6. Fu fo ya' ga ti Yakuba nda Abdu woney?	6. Which houses are Yakuba and Abdu's?
E. 1. Kwara fo ga ti ni wone?	E. 1. Which village is yours?
2. Kwara fo ga ti aran wone?	2. Which village is yours?
3. Kwara fo ga ti a wone?	3. Which village is his/hers?
4. Kwara fo ga ti i wone?	4. Which village is theirs?
F. 1. Kwara fo ya' ga ti ni woney?	F. 1. Which villages are yours?
2. Kwara fo ya' ga ti aran woney?	2. Which villages are yours?
3. Kwara fo ya' ga ti a woney?	3. Which villages are his/hers?
4. Kwara fo ya' ga ti i woney?	4. Which villages are theirs?
G. 1. Kwara fo ga ti Abdu wone?	G. 1. Which village is Abdu's?
2. Kwara fo ga ti Fatu wone?	2. Which village is Fatu's?
3. Kwara fo ga ti Bakari wone?	3. Which village is Bakari's?
4. Kwara fo ga ti Maman wone?	4. Which village is Maman's?
5. Kwara fo ga ti Amina wone?	5. Which village is Amina's?
6. Kwara fo ga ti Yakuba wone?	6. Which village is Yakuba's?
H. 1. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Fatu woney?	H. 1. Which villages are Abdu and Fatu's?
2. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Fatu nda Bakari woney?	2. Which villages are Fatu and Bakari's?
3. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Bakari nda Maman woney?	3. Which villages are Bakari and Maman's?
4. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Maman nda Amina woney?	4. Which villages are Maman and Amina's?

5. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Amina nda Yakuba woney?	5. Which villages are Amina and Yakuba's?
6. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Yakuba nda Abdu woney?	6. Which villages are Yakuba and Abdu's?
I. 1. Wone ga ti ay wone.	I. 1. That/This is mine.
2. Wone ga ti iri wone.	2. That/This is ours.
3. Wone ga ti a wone.	3. That/This is his/hers.
4. Wone ga ti i wone.	4. That/This is theirs.
J. 1. Wone ya' ga ti ay woney.	J. 1. Those/These are mine.
2. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.	2. Those/These are ours.
3. Wone ya' ga ti a woney.	3. Those/These are his/hers.
4. Wone ya' ga ti i woney.	4. Those/These are theirs.
K. 1. Wone ga ti Abdu wone.	K. 1. That/This is Abdu's.
2. Wone ga ti Fatu wone.	2. That/This is Fatu's.
3. Wone ga ti Bakari wone.	3. That/This is Bakari's.
4. Wone ga ti Maman wone.	4. That/This is Maman's.
5. Wone ga ti Amina wone.	5. That/This is Amina's.
6. Wone ga ti Yakuba wone.	6. That/This is Yakuba's.
L. 1. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Fatu woney.	L. 1. Those/These are Abdu and Fatu's.
2. Wone ya' ga ti Fatu nda Bakari woney.	2. Those/These are Fatu and Bakari's.
3. Wone ya' ga ti Bakari nda Maman woney.	3. Those/These are Bakari and Maman's.
4. Wone ya' ga ti Maman nda Amina woney.	4. These/These are Maman and Amina's.
5. Wone ya' ga ti Amina nda Yakuba woney.	5. Those/These are Amina and Yakuba's.
6. Wone ya' ga ti Yakuba nda Abdu woney.	6. Those/These are Yakuba and Abdu's.

M. 1. Ni zanka ne?	M. 1. Is this/that your child?
2. Aran zanka ne?	2. Is this/that your child?
3. A zanka ne?	3. Is this/that his/her child?
4. I zanka ne?	4. Is this/that their child?
N. 1. Ni zankey ne?	N. 1. Are these/those your children?
2. Aran zankey ne?	2. Are these/those your children?
3. A zankey ne?	3. Are these/those his/her children?
4. I zankey ne?	4. Are these/those their children?
O. 1. Ni faro ne?	O. 1. Is this/that your field?
2. Aran faro ne?	2. Is this/that your field?
3. A faro ne?	3. Is this/that his/her field?
4. I faro ne?	4. Is this/that their field?
P. 1. Ni farey ne?	P. 1. Are these/those your fields?
2. Aran farey ne?	2. Are these/those your fields?
3. A farey ne?	3. Are these/those his/her fields?
4. I farey ne?	4. Are these/those their fields?
Q. 1. Ni habo ne?	Q. 1. Is this/that your market?
2. Aran habo ne?	2. Is this/that your market?
3. A habo ne?	3. Is this/that his/her market?
4. I habo ne?	4. Is this/that their market?
R. 1. Ni habey ne?	R. 1. Are these/those your markets?
2. Aran habey ne?	2. Are these/those your markets?
3. A habey ne?	3. Are these/those his/her markets?
4. I habey ne?	4. Are these/those their markets?
S. 1. Ni zanka no newo?	S. 1. Is this one right here your child?
2. Aran zanka no newo?	2. Is this one right here your child?
3. A zanka no newo?	3. Is this one right here his/her child?
4. I zanka no newo?	4. Is this one right here their child?

T. 1. Ni zankey no newo?	T. 1. Are these right here your children?
2. Aran zankey no newo?	2. Are these right here your children?
3. A zankey no newo?	3. Are these right here his/her children?
4. I zankey no newo?	4. Are these right here their children?
U. 1. Ni fuwo no newo?	U. 1. Is this one right here your house?
2. Aran fuwo no newo?	2. Is this one right here your house?
3. A fuwo no newo?	3. Is this one right here his/her house?
4. I fuwo no newo?	4. Is this one right here their house?
V. 1. Ni fuwey no newo?	V. 1. Are these right here your houses?
2. Aran fuwey no newo?	2. Are these right here your houses?
3. A fuwey no newo?	3. Are these right here his/her houses?
4. I fuwey no newo?	4. Are these right here their houses?
W. 1. Ni kwara no newo?	W. 1. Is this one right here your village?
2. Aran kwara no newo?	2. Is this one right here your village?
3. A kwara no newo?	3. Is this one right here his/her village?
4. I kwara no newo?	4. Is this one right here their village?
X. 1. Ni kwarey no newo?	X. 1. Are these right here your villages?
2. Aran kwarey no newo?	2. Are these right here your villages?
3. A kwarey no newo?	3. Are these right here his/her villages?
4. I kwarey no newo?	4. Are these right here their villages.
Y. 1. Yo'go wono ga ti ay wone.	Y. 1. That one right over there is mine.
2. Yo'go wono ga ti iri wone.	2. That one right over there is ours.
3. Yo'go wono ga ti a wone.	3. That one right over there is his/hers.
4. Yo'go wono ga ti i wone.	4. That one right over there is theirs.

Z. 1. Yo'go woney ga ti ay woney.	Z. 1. Those right over there are mine.
2. Yo'go woney ga ti iri woney.	2. Those right over there are ours.
3. Yo'go woney ga ti a woney.	3. Those right over there are his/hers.
4. Yo'go woney ga ti i woney.	4. Those right over there are theirs.
AA. 1. Yo'go wono ga ti Abdu wone.	AA. 1. That one right over there is Abdu's.
2. Yo'go wono ga ti Fatu wone.	2. That one right over there is Fatu's.
3. Yo'go wono ga ti Bakari wone.	3. That one right over there is Bakari's.
4. Yo'go wono ga ti Maman wone.	4. That one right over there is Maman's.
5. Yo'go wono ga ti Amina wone.	5. That one right over there is Amina's.
6. Yo'go wono ga ti Yakuba wone.	6. That one right over there is Yakuba's.
BB. 1. Yo'go woney ga ti Abdu woney.	BB. 1. Those right over there are Abdu's.
2. Yo'go woney ga ti Fatu woney.	2. Those right over there are Fatu's.
3. Yo'go woney ga ti Bakari woney.	3. Those right over there are Bakari's.
4. Yo'go woney ga ti Maman woney.	4. Those right over there are Maman's.
5. Yo'go woney ga ti Amina woney.	5. Those right over there are Amina's.
6. Yo'go woney ga ti Yakuba woney.	6. Those right over there are Yakuba's.

Phonology Drills

A. i
hin

B. ti
tin

C. bita
bi'di

D. tyiri
tyi'di

E. tyiri
dyiri

F. dyiri
Dyi'go

G. hima
hi'za

H. se
sey

I. zen
zey

J. tyew
dyew

k. tye
tyen

L. waney
kan'ey

M. dyedyey
dye'di

N. ba
ban

O. ba
bay

P. ya
ya'

Q. ya
yaw

R. ya'
yaw

S. naro
n'waro

T. tyiraw
diraw

U. bo
bo'

V. ko
koy

W. ge
goy

X. tomtom
donton

Y. womo
zom'o

Z. tu
tun

AA. fu
fun

BB. woy
wuy

UNIT 12

Dialogue 1

A: Kwara fo ga ti ni wone?	A: Which village is yours?
B: Kwara wone ga ti ay wone.	B: This village is mine.
wefo	which one, what one
A: Wefo ga ti Bakari wone?	A: Which one is Bakari's?
wodin	that one (near by)
B: Wodin ga ti a wone.	B: That one is his.

Dialogue 2

A: Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?	A: Which houses are yours?
B: Fu wodin ya' ga ti iri woney.	B: Those houses are ours.
A: Wefo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?	A: Which ones are Abdu and Maman's?
wohe'di	that one (middle distance)
B: Wohe'di ya' ga ti i woney.	B: Those are theirs.

Dialogue 3

A: Fari fo ga ti Bakari wone?	A: Which field is Bakari's?
B: Fari wohe'di ga ti a wone.	B: That field is his.
A: Wefo ga ti ni wone?	A: Which one is yours?
woyongo	that one (far away)
B: Woyongo ga ti ay wone.	B: That one is mine.

Dialogue 4

A: Zanka fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?	A: Which children are Abdu and Maman's?
B: Zanka woyengo ya' ga ti i woney.	B: These children are theirs.
A: Wofo ya' ga ti aran woney?	A: Which ones are yours?
B: Weme ya' ga ti iri woney.	B: These are ours.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Kwara fo ga ti ni wone?	A. 1. Which village is yours?
2. Kwara fo ga ti aran wone?	2. Which village is yours?
3. Kwara fo ga ti a wone?	3. Which village is his/hers?
4. Kwara fo ga ti i wone?	4. Which village is theirs?
5. Kwara fo ga ti Bakari wone?	5. Which village is Bakari's?
6. Kwara fo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone?	6. Which village is Abdu and Maman's?

B. 1. Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?	B. 1. Which houses are yours?
2. Fu fo ya' ga ti i woney?	2. Which houses are theirs?
3. Fu fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?	3. Which houses are Abdu and Maman's?

C. 1. Wofo ga ti ni wone?	C. 1. Which one is yours?
2. Wofo ga ti aran wone?	2. Which one is yours?
3. Wofo ga ti a wone?	3. Which one is his/hers?
4. Wofo ga ti i wone?	4. Which one is theirs?
5. Wofo ga ti Bakari wone?	5. Which one is Bakari's?
6. Wofo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone?	6. Which one is Abdu and Maman's?

D. 1. Wafo ya' ga ti aran woney?	D. 1. Which ones are yours?
2. Wafo ya' ga ti i woney?	2. Which ones are theirs?
3. Wafo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?	3. Which ones are Abdu and Maman's?
E. 1. Zanka fo ga ti aran wone?	E. 1. Which child is yours?
2. Wofo ga ti aran wone?	2. Which one is yours?
3. Zanka fo ya' ga ti aran woney?	3. Which children are yours?
4. Wofo ya' ga ti aran woney?	4. Which ones are yours?
F. 1. Fari fo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone?	F. 1. Which field is Abdu and Maman's?
2. Wofo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone?	2. Which one is Abdu and Maman's?
3. Fari fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?	3. Which fields are Abdu and Maman's?
4. Wofo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?	4. Which ones are Abdu and Maman's?
G. 1. Kwara wone ga ti ay wone.	G. 1. This village is mine.
2. Kwara wone ga ti iri wone.	2. This village is ours.
3. Kwara wone ga ti a wone.	3. This village is his/hers.
4. Kwara wone ga ti i wone.	4. This village is theirs.
5. Kwara wone ga ti Bakari wone.	5. This village is Bakari's.
6. Kwara wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. This village is Abdu and Maman's.
H. 1. Fu wone ya' ga ti iri woney.	H. 1. These houses are ours.
2. Fu wone ya' ga ti i woney.	2. These houses are theirs.
3. Fu wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. These houses are Abdu and Maman's.
I. 1. Wone ga ti ay wone.	I. 1. This one is mine.
2. Wone ga ti iri wone.	2. This one is ours.
3. Wone ga ti a wone.	3. This one is his/hers.

4. Wone ga ti i wone.	4. This one is theirs.
5. Wone ga ti Bakari wone.	5. This one is Bakari's.
6. Wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. This one is Abdu and Maman's.
J. 1. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.	J. 1. These are ours.
2. Wone ya' ga ti i woney.	2. These are theirs.
3. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. These are Abdu and Maman's.
K. 1. Zanka wone ga ti iri wone.	K. 1. This child is ours.
2. Wone ga ti iri wone.	2. This one is ours.
3. Zanka wone ya' ga ti iri woney.	3. These children are ours.
4. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.	4. These are ours.
L. 1. Fari wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	L. 1. This field is Abdu and Maman's.
2. Wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	2. This one is Abdu and Maman's.
3. Fari wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. These fields are Abdu and Maman's.
4. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	4. These are Abdu and Maman's.
M. 1. Kwara wodin ga ti ay wone.	M. 1. That village is mine.
2. Kwara wodin ga ti iri wone.	2. That village is ours.
3. Kwara wodin ga ti a wone.	3. That village is his/hers.
4. Kwara wodin ga ti i wone.	4. That village is theirs.
5. Kwara wodin ga ti Bakari wone.	5. That village is Bakari's.
6. Kwara wodin ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. That village is Abdu and Maman's.
N. 1. Fu wodin ya' ga ti iri woney.	N. 1. Those houses are ours.
2. Fu wodin ya' ga ti i woney.	2. Those houses are theirs.
3. Fu wodin ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those houses are Abdu and Maman's.

O. 1. Wedin ga ti ay wone.	O. 1. That one is mine.
2. Wodin ga ti iri wene.	2. That one is ours.
3. Wedin ga ti a wene.	3. That one is his/hers.
4. Wedin ga ti i wone.	4. That one is theirs.
5. Wedin ga ti Bakari wene.	5. That one is Bakari's.
6. Wedin ga ti Abdu nda Maman wene.	6. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
P. 1. Wedin ya' ga ti iri weney.	P. 1. Those are ours.
2. Wedin ya' ga ti i weney.	2. Those are theirs.
3. Wedin ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman weney.	3. Those are Abdu and Maman's.
Q. 1. Zanka wedin ga ti iri wene.	Q. 1. That child is ours.
2. Wodin ga ti iri wene.	2. That one is ours.
3. Zanka wedin ya' ga ti iri weney.	3. These children are ours.
4. Wedin ya' ga ti iri woney.	4. These are ours.
R. 1. Fari wedin ga ti Abdu nda Maman wene.	R. 1. That field is Abdu and Maman's.
2. Wedin ga ti Abdu nda Maman wene.	2. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
3. Fari wedin ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those fields are Abdu and Maman's.
4. Wedin ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	4. These are Abdu and Maman's.
S. 1. Kwara wehe'di ga ti ay wone.	S. 1. That village is mine.
2. Kwara wehe'di ga ti iri wone.	2. That village is ours.
3. Kwara wohe'di ga ti a wone.	3. That village is his/hers.
4. Kwara wohe'di ga ti i wone.	4. That village is theirs.
5. Kwara wche'di ga ti Bakari wene.	5. That village is Bakari's.
6. Kwara wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. That village is Abdu and Maman's.

T. 1. Fu wohe'di ya' ga ti iri woney.	T. 1. Those houses are ours.
2. Fu wohe'di ya' ga ti i woney.	2. Those houses are theirs.
3. Fu wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those houses are Abdu and Maman's.
U. 1. Wohe'di ga ti ay wone.	U. 1. That one is mine.
2. Wohe'di ga ti iri wone.	2. That one is ours.
3. Wohe'di ga ti a wone.	3. That one is his/hers.
4. Wohe'di ga ti i wone.	4. That one is theirs.
5. Wohe'di ga ti Bakari wone.	5. That one is Bakari's.
6. Wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
V. 1. Wohe'di ya' ga ti iri woney.	V. 1. Those are ours.
2. Wohe'di ya' ga ti i woney.	2. Those are theirs.
3. Wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those are Abdu and Maman's.
W. 1. Zanka wohe'di ga ti iri wone.	W. 1. That child is ours.
2. Wohe'di ga ti iri wone.	2. That one is ours.
3. Zanka wohe'di ya' ga ti iri woney.	3. Those children are ours.
4. Wohe'di ya' ga ti iri woney.	4. These are ours.
X. 1. Fari wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	X. 1. That field is Abdu and Maman's.
2. Wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	2. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
3. Fari wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those fields are Abdu and Maman's.
4. Wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	4. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

Y. 1.	Kwara woyongo ga ti ay wone.	Y. 1. That village is mine.
2.	Kwara woyongo ga ti iri wone.	2. That village is ours.
3.	Kwara woyongo ga ti a wone.	3. That village is his/hers.
4.	Kwara woyongo ga ti i wone.	4. That village is theirs.
5.	Kwara woyongo ga ti Bakari wone.	5. That village is Bakari's.
6.	Kwara woyongo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. That village is Abdu and Maman's.
Z. 1.	Fu woyongo ya' ga ti iri woney.	Z. 1. Those houses are ours.
2.	Fu woyongo ya' ga ti i woney.	2. Those houses are theirs.
3.	Fu woyongo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those houses are Abdu and Maman's.
AA. 1.	Woyongo ga ti ay wone.	AA. 1. That one is mine.
2.	Woyongo ga ti iri wone.	2. That one is ours.
3.	Woyongo ga ti a wone.	3. That one is his/hers.
4.	Woyongo ga ti i wone.	4. That one is theirs.
5.	Woyongo ga ti Bakari wone.	5. That one is Bakari's.
6.	Woyongo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	6. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
BB. 1.	Woyongo ya' ga ti iri woney.	BB. 1. Those are ours.
2.	Woyongo ya' ga ti i woney.	2. Those are theirs.
3.	Woyongo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those are Abdu and Maman's.
CC. 1.	Zanka woyongo ga ti iri wone.	CC. 1. That child is ours.
2.	Woyongo ga ti iri wone.	2. That one is ours.
3.	Zanka woyongo ya' ga ti iri woney.	3. Those children are ours.
4.	Woyongo ya' ga ti iri woney.	4. Those are ours.

DD. 1. Fari woyongo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	DD. 1. That field is Abdu and Maman's.
2. Woyongo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.	2. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
3. Fari woyongo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	3. Those fields are Abdu and Maman's.
4. Woyongo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.	4. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

Phonology Drills[1]

bi	to thread (cotton)
A. 1. Amina go ga habu bi.	A. 1. Amina is threading cotton.
bi	late
2. Tyino bi.	2. It's late.
bi	black (indef.)
3. Tafe bi no.	3. It's a black tafe.
bi	wound, sore (indef.)
4. Ay go'da bi.	4. I have a wound.
bi	yesterday
5. Hari ka' bi.	5. It rained yesterday.
bi	shade (indef.)
6. A go turi bi ra.	6. It's in the shade of a tree.
biri	bone (indef.)
B. 1. Ha'so na biri hamey.	B. 1. The dog took a bone and escaped.
bIri	to raise
2. Ay no na kotyiyo bIri.	2. I raised this child.

biya	shade (def.)
C. 1. Ay go fuwo biya ra.	C. 1. I'm in the shade of the house.
biya	to leave in the morning.
2. Abdu biya ga koy Doso.	2. Abdu left for Doso this morning.
beri	to cut
D. 1. Abdu go ga turo beri.	D. 1. Abdu is cutting a tree.
beri	to speak ill of
2. Ay na Adamu beri.	2. I spoke ill of Adamu.
bēri	to grow big
3. Bibata bēri son'o.	3. Bibata is big now.
ba	part, portion (indef.)
E. 1. Ay na ay ba sa'bu.	E. 1. I took my portion.
bā	to want, like, love
2. Ay ga bā Bibata.	2. I like Bibata.
bā	more than, greater than
3. A bā ni.	3. He is more important than you.
bā	even
4. Bā ni ga bay.	4. Even you know.
bani	health (indef.)
F. 1. Son'o Abdu du bani.	F. 1. Abdu is better now.
bāni	bani (a type of tree)(indef.)
2. Adamu na bāni ka'be ka.	2. Adamu removed a branch of the bani.
bāni	why? (as a reproach)
3. Hima, bāni ka' ni furo haro ra?	3. Hima, why did you go back in the water?

buru	cloud (indef.)
G. 1. Buru go bena ra.	G. 1. There are clouds in the sky.
buru	half (of a cooked fowl) (indef.)
2. Abdu na gorn'o buru fo n'wa.	2. Abdu ate half a chicken.
būru	bread (indef.)
3. Ay no dala hi'ka būru.	3. Give me two dalas (worth) of bread.

Note on the Phonology Drills

1. In Djerma the meaning of many words having identical form can be understood only in context. Many such words, however, differ from each other in vowel length. For example, note the contrast bēri 'to cut' or 'to speak ill of' and beri 'to grow big,' where the vowel of the first syllable of beri 'to grow big' is longer than the corresponding vowel of beri 'to cut' or 'to speak ill of.' A macron over a vowel is used in these drills to denote length. Some words differ only in the doubling of a consonant. Note, for example, fata 'wing' and fatta 'to go out' in Unit 20 below.

The Phonology Drills of Units 12 - 20 illustrate these features of Djerma speech.

UNIT 13

Dialogue 1

fo'do	road, path (indef.)
fo'da	road, path (def.)
A: Fo'do fo ga ti Doso fo'da?	A: Which is the road to Doso?
B: Doso fo'da ne.	B: That's the road to Doso.
moru	far
A: Doso ga moru ne?	A: Is Doso far from here?
man	near
B: Ha'a, a ga man.	B: No, it's near.
si'tina	first, next
bo'	on
I'ga ga ti kwara si'tina fo'da bo'.	It's the first village on the road.

Dialogue 2

boro	person, one (indef.)
da	(emphasizes the manner of an action)
A: Mate no boro ga koy da Tilaberi?	A: How do you go to Tilaberi?
B: Tilaberi fo'da ne.	B: That's the road to Tilaberi.
hare	direction (def./indef.)
gana	to follow
A: Ne hare no boro ga gana?	A: Do you go in that direction?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.
kubi	to turn
hi'ka'ta	second
Boro ga kubi kwara hi'ka'ta do.	You turn at the second village.

ka'be	hand (indef.)
n'wari	item of food (indef.)
ka'be n'wari[1]	right hand (indef.)
hare	toward
A: Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?	A: Do you turn to the right?
ka'buwo	left hand (def./indef.)
B: Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare.	B: No, you turn to the left.
A: Tilaberi ga man ne?	A: Is Tilaberi near here?
B: Ha'a, a ga moru.	B: No, it's far.

Dialogue 3

hi'za'ta	third
A: Boro ga kubi kwara hi'za'ta do.	A: You turn at the third village.
B: Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare?	B: Do you turn to the left?
A: Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare.	A: No, you turn to the right.

Dialogue 4

Ndu'ga	Ndu'ga
A: Man Ndu'ga kwara?	A: Where is Ndu'ga village?
B: A go ne hare.	B: It's that way.
A: Kwara si'tina no?	A: Is it the next village?
i	(replaces the noun when an adjective stands alone)
B: Ha'a, i hi'za'ta no.	B: No, it's the third.
Gamkale[2]	Gamkale
Gamkale si'tina[3] no.	Gamkale is the first.
Saga[2]	Saga
Saga i hi'ka'ta no.	Saga is the second.

Dialogue 5

motey	buses, trucks, cars (def.)
kay	to stop
A: Man no motey[4] ga kay?	A: Where do the buses stop?
B: Habo do no i ga kay.	B: They stop at the market.
A: Ne hare no i ga kay?	A: Do they stop on this side?
ya	there
B: Ha'a, ya hare no i ga kay.	B: No, they stop on that side.

Dialogue 6

A: Ya hare no i ga kay?	A: Do they stop on that side?
B: Ha'a, ne hare no i ga kay.	B: No, they stop on this side.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. Literally, the hand (with which one eats) food.
2. A village.
3. Si'tina is the only ordinal numeral which is not preceded by i in this type of structure.
4. Typically, in remote villages motey refers to all types of motor vehicles.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Fo'do fo ga ti Doso fo'da?	A. 1. Which is the road to Doso?
2. Fo'do fo ga ti Ndu'ga fo'da?	2. Which is the road to Ndu'ga?
3. Fo'do fo ga ti Gamkale fo'da?	3. Which is the road to Gamkale?
4. Fo'do fo ga ti Saga fo'da?	4. Which is the road to Saga?

B. 1. Mate no boro ga koy da Doso?	B. 1. How do you go to Doso?
2. Mate no boro ga koy da Ndu'ga?	2. How do you go to Ndu'ga?
3. Mate no boro ga koy da Gamkale?	3. How do you go to Gamkale?
4. Mate no boro ga koy da Saga?	4. How do you go to Saga?
C. 1. Man Doso kwara?	C. 1. Where is Doso village?
2. Man Ndu'ga kwara?	2. Where is Ndu'ga village?
3. Man Gamkale kwara?	3. Where is Gamkale village?
4. Man Saga kwara?	4. Where is Saga village?
D. 1. Doso fo'da ne.	D. 1. That's the road to Doso.
2. Ndu'ga fo'da ne.	2. That's the road to Ndu'ga.
3. Gamkale fo'da ne.	3. That's the road to Gamkale.
4. Saga fo'da ne.	4. That's the road to Saga.
E. 1. Doso ga moru ne? Ha'a, a ga man.	E. 1. Is Doso far from here? No, it's near.
2. Ndu'ga ga moru ne? Ha'a, a ga man.	2. Is Ndu'ga far from here? No, it's near.
3. Gamkale ga moru ne? Ha'a, a ga man.	3. Is Gamkale far from here? No, it's near.
4. Saga ga moru ne? Ha'a, a ga man.	4. Is Saga far from here? No, it's near.
F. 1. Doso ga man ne? Ha'a, a ga moru.	F. 1. Is Doso near here? No, it's far.
2. Ndu'ga ga man ne? Ha'a, a ga moru.	2. Is Ndu'ga near here? No, it's far.
3. Gamkale ga man ne? Ha'a, a ga moru.	3. Is Gamkale near here? No, it's far.
4. Saga ga man ne? Ha'a, a ga moru.	4. Is Saga near here? No, it's far.

G. 1. Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?	G. 1. Do you turn to the right?
2. Ay ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?	2. Do I turn to the right?
3. Iri ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?	3. Do we turn to the right?
H. 1. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare?	H. 1. Do you turn to the left?
2. Ay ga kubi ka'buwo hare?	2. Do I turn to the left?
3. Iri ga kubi ka'buwo hare?	3. Do we turn to the left?
I. 1. Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare? Ohe.	I. 1. Do you turn to the right? Yes.
2. Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare? Ha'a.	2. Do you turn to the right? No.
3. Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare? Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare.	3. Do you turn to the right? No, you turn to the left.
J. 1. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare? Ohe.	J. 1. Do you turn to the left? Yes.
2. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare? Ha'a.	2. Do you turn to the left? No.
3. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare? Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare.	3. Do you turn to the left? No, you turn to the right.
K. 1. Ne hare no boro ga gana?	K. 1. Do you go in that direction?
2. Ne hare no ay ga gana?	2. Do I go in that direction?
3. Ne hare no iri ga gana?	3. Do we go in that direction?

L. 1. Ne hare no boro ga gana?	L. 1. Do you go in that direction?
Oho.	Yes.
2. Ne hare no boro ga gana?	2. Do you go in that direction?
Oho. A go ne hare.	Yes. It's the way.
3. Ne hare no boro ga gana?	3. Do you go in that direction?
Oho. Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare.	Yes. You turn to the right.
4. Ne hare no boro ga gana?	4. Do you go in that direction?
Oho. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare.	Yes. You turn to the left.
M. 1. Kwara si'tina no?	M. 1. Is it the first/next village?
2. Kwara hi'ka'ta no?	2. Is it the second village?
3. Kwara hi'za'ta no?	3. Is it the third village?
N. 1. Boro ga kubi kwara si'tina do.	N. 1. You turn at the first village.
2. Boro ga kubi kwara hi'ka'ta do.	2. You turn at the second village.
3. Boro ga kubi kwara hi'za'ta do.	3. You turn at the third village.
O. 1. Boro ga kubi habu si'tina do.	O. 1. You turn at the first market.
2. Boro ga kubi habu hi'ka'ta do.	2. You turn at the second market.
3. Boro ga kubi habu hi'za'ta do.	3. You turn at the third market.
P. 1. Boro ga kubi fo'do si'tina do.	P. 1. You turn at the first road.
2. Boro ga kubi fo'do hi'ka'ta do.	2. You turn at the second road.
3. Boro ga kubi fo'do hi'za'ta do.	3. You turn at the third road.
Q. 1. I'ga ga ti kwara si'tina fo'da bo'.	Q. 1. It's the first village on the road.
2. I'ga ga ti fari si'tina fo'da bo'.	2. It's the first field on the road.
3. I'ga ga ti fu si'tina fo'da bo'.	3. It's the first house on the road.

R. 1. I'ga ga ti kwara hi'ka'ta fo'da bo'.	R. 1. It's the second village on the road.
2. I'ga ga ti fari hi'ka'ta fo'da bo'.	2. It's the second field on the road.
3. I'ga ga ti fu hi'ka'ta fo'da be'.	3. It's the second house on the road.
S. 1. I'ga ga ti kwara hi'za'ta fo'da be'.	S. 1. It's the third village on the road.
2. I'ga ga ti fari hi'za'ta fo'da be'.	2. It's the third field on the road.
3. I'ga ga ti fu hi'za'ta fo'da be'.	3. It's the third house on the road.
T. 1. Si'tina no.	T. 1. It's the first.
2. I hi'ka'ta no.	2. It's the second.
3. I hi'za'ta no.	3. It's the third.
U. 1. Doso si'tina no.	U. 1. Doso is the first.
2. Ndu'ga si'tina no.	2. Ndu'ga is the first.
3. Gamkale si'tina no.	3. Gamkale is the first.
4. Saga si'tina no.	4. Saga is the first.
V. 1. Doso i hi'ka'ta no.	V. 1. Doso is the second.
2. Ndu'ga i hi'ka'ta no.	2. Ndu'ga is the second.
3. Gamkale i hi'ka'ta no.	3. Gamkale is the second.
4. Saga i hi'ka'ta no.	4. Saga is the second.
W. 1. Doso i hi'za'ta no.	W. 1. Doso is the third.
2. Ndu'ga i hi'za'ta no.	2. Ndu'ga is the third.
3. Gamkale i hi'za'ta no.	3. Gamkale is the third.
4. Saga i hi'za'ta no.	4. Saga is the third.
X. 1. Habe do no i ga kay.	X. 1. They stop at the market.
2. Kwara do no i ga kay.	2. They stop at the village.
3. Fo'do do no i ga kay.	3. They stop at the road.

Y. 1. Man no motey ga kay?	Y. 1. Where do the buses stop?
Habo do no i ga kay.	They stop at the market.
2. Man no motey ga kay?	2. Where do the buses stop?
Kwara do no i ga kay.	They stop at the village.
3. Man no motey ga kay?	3. Where do the buses stop?
Fo'da do no i ga kay.	They stop at the road.
Z. 1. Ne hare no i ga kay?	Z. 1. Do they stop on this side?
Oho.	Yes.
2. Ne hare no i ga kay?	2. Do they stop on this side?
Ha'a.	No.
3. Ne hare no i ga kay?	3. Do they stop on this side?
Ha'a, ya hare no i ga kay.	No, they stop on that side.
AA. 1. Ya hare no i ga kay?	AA. 1. Do they stop on that side?
Oho.	Yes.
2. Ya hare no i ga kay?	2. Do they stop on that side?
Ha'a.	No.
3. Ya hare no i ga kay?	3. Do they stop on that side?
Ha'a, ne hare no i ga kay.	No, they stop on this side.

Phonology Drills

tibi	to get stuck
A. 1. Mota tibi.	A. 1. The vehicle got stuck.
tibi	handful (indef.)
2. Ay mo subu tibi fo.	2. Give me a handful of grass.
tibi	to seize
3. I na Abdu tibi.	3. They seized Abdu.

ta	to take
B. 1. Maman, ta goro ne.	B. 1. Maman, take the cola nut.
ta	to accept
2. Ay ta ni senno.	2. I've accepted your word.
ta	to sew
3. Maman go ga tafa ta.	3. Maman is sewing the tafa.
tā	trap (indef.)
4. Ay tā na toboy di.	4. My trap caught a hare.
tamu	shoes (indef.)
C. 1. Abdu go'da tamu hanno.	C. 1. Abdu has pretty shoes.
tamú	to step on
2. Ay na Abdu kwayo tamu.	2. I stepped on Abdu's kwayo.
ta'da	shed (indef.)
D. 1. Gorn'ey go ta'da bo'.	D. 1. The chickens are in the shed.
tā'da	fruit of the calabash tree (def./indef.)
2. Amina na tā'da hina.	2. Amina cooked the fruit of the calabash tree.
tafa	mare (def.)
E. 1. Abdu tafa hay.	E. 1. Abdu's mare foaled.
tāfa	tafa (garment)(def.)
2. Bakari go ga tāfa ta.	2. Bakari is sewing the tafa.
tu	plate (indef.)
F. 1. Hawro go tu ra.	F. 1. The food is on a plate.

tu	answer!
2. Abdu, tu! Ni ga no ay go.	2. Abdu, answer! I'm talking to you.
tyī'se	rivalry, jealousy (def./ indef.)
G. 1. Abdu ga tyī'se Hima ga.	G. 1. Abdu is jealous of Hima.
tyī'se	to vaccinate
2. Lokotoro na zankey tyī'se.	2. The doctor vaccinated the children.
tyimse	fingernail (indef.)
H. 1. Ay na ka'be tyimse dumbu.	H. 1. I cut my fingernails.
tyīmse	piece (indef.)
2. Ay no gasu tyīmse.	2. Give me a piece of calabash.
tya	foot (def.)
I. 1. Ay tya marey.	I. 1. My foot is hurt.
tya	to call to prayer
2. Ladan go ga tya.	2. The muezzin is calling to prayer.

UNIT 14

Dialogue 1

wo	(signals the subject in some structures)
alfari	farmer (indef.)
A: Bakari wo alfari no?	A: Is Bakari a farmer?
kurko	herdsman (indef.)
B: Ha'a, kurko no.	B: No, he's a herdsman.
kuru	to herd
A: Abdu ga kuru no?	A: Does Abdu herd?
far	to farm
B: Ha'a, a ga far no.	B: No, he farms.

Dialogue 2

goy	work (indef. sg.)
te	to do, make
A: Goy fo no Maman ga te?	A: What work does Maman do?
zam	blacksmith (indef.)
B: Zam no.	B: He's a blacksmith.
za	since
A: Za wati fo no a te zam?	A: How long has he been a blacksmith?
dyiri	year (indef.)
hi'ka	two
ka'	that (relative)
B: Dyiri hi'ka no ka' a te zam.	B: He's been a blacksmith for two years.

fo	a/an, one
ga	to help
A: Boro fo ga a ga?	A: Does someone help him?
gako	helper (indef.)
B: Oho, a go'da gako fo.	B: Yes, he has one helper.

Dialogue 3

go ga	(signals action in progress)
A: Ni go ga[1] far hu'kuna?	A: Are you farming today?
B: Ha'a, hu'kuna ay go ga kuru no.	B: No, I'm herding today.
mardye	how much, how many
A: Boro mardye no go ga ni ga?	A: How many men are helping you?
hi'za	three
B: Boro hi'za no go ga ay ga.	B: Three men are helping me.

Dialogue 4

A: I fo no Yakuba go ga te hu'kuna?	A: What is Yakuba doing today?
dan	to forge
B: A go ga dan no hu'kuna.	B: He's forging today.
A: May no go ga a ga?	A: Who's helping him?
B: Abdu no go ga a ga.	B: Abdu is helping him.

Dialogue 5

A: Za wati fo no ni go ga dan?	A: How long have you been forging?
gu	five
B: Dyiri gu ne ka' ay go ga dan.	B: I've been forging for five years.
A: Ni go'da gako ya'?	A: Do you have helpers?
tatyi	four
B: Oho, ay go'da gako tatyi.	B: Yes, I have four helpers.

Dialogue 6

A: Goy fo no ni ga te?	A: What work do you do?
B: Ay wo alfari no.	B: I'm a farmer.

Dialogue 7

A: Man Abdu go?	A: Where is Abdu?
B: A go farey ra.	B: He's in the fields.
A: I'ga wo alfari no?	A: Is he a farmer?
B: Oho, i'ga wo alfari no.	B: Yes, he's a farmer.

Note on the Dialogues

1. There are only three tenses in Djerma: Present, Past, and Future. The Past is identical with the Infinitive; the Future is formed by placing ga before the Infinitive; the Present is formed by placing ga, go ga, or go no ga before the Infinitive. The most common form of the Imperative

is identical with the Infinitive. The Subjunctive, formed by placing *ma* before the Infinitive, will be treated in a later unit. All verbs except "to be" and "to have" follow these patterns. "To have" is treated in later units. "To be" is formed in various ways: with *go* and *bara* in the Present; with *goro* in the Past; with *ga* in the Future; and with the copulas *no*, *ne*, and *ga ti*.

Structural Drills

A. 1. *Bakari* wo alfari no?	A. 1. Is Bakari a farmer?
2. *Abdu* wo alfari no?	2. Is Abdu a farmer?
3. *Maman* wo alfari no?	3. Is Maman a farmer?
4. *Yakuba* wo alfari no?	4. Is Yakuba a farmer?
B. 1. *Bakari* wo kurko no?	B. 1. Is Bakari a herdsman?
2. *Abdu* wo kurko no?	2. Is Abdu a herdsman?
3. *Maman* wo kurko no?	3. Is Maman a herdsman?
4. *Yakuba* wo kurko no?	4. Is Yakuba a herdsman?
C. 1. *Bakari* wo zam no?	C. 1. Is Bakari a blacksmith?
2. *Abdu* wo zam no?	2. Is Abdu a blacksmith?
3. *Maman* wo zam no?	3. Is Maman a blacksmith?
4. *Yakuba* wo zam no?	4. Is Yakuba a blacksmith?
D. 1. *Bakari* wo gako no?[1]	D. 1. Is Bakari a helper?
2. *Abdu* wo gako no?[1]	2. Is Abdu a helper?
3. *Maman* wo gako no?[1]	3. Is Maman a helper?
4. *Yakuba* wo gako no?[1]	4. Is Yakuba a helper?
E. 1. Ni wo *alfari* no?[1]	E. 1. Are you a farmer?
2. Ni wo *kurko* no?[1]	2. Are you a herdsman?
3. Ni wo *zam* no?[1]	3. Are you a blacksmith?
4. Ni wo *gako* no?[1]	4. Are you a helper?

F. 1. I'ga wo alfari no?[1]	F. 1. Is he a farmer?
2. I'ga wo kurko no?[1]	2. Is he a herdsman?
3. I'ga wo zam no?[1]	3. Is he a blacksmith?
4. I'ga wo gako no?[1]	4. Is he a helper?
G. 1. Alfari no.	G. 1. He's a farmer.
2. Kurko no.	2. He's a herdsman.
3. Zam no.	3. He's a blacksmith.
4. Gako no.[1]	4. He's a helper.
H. 1. Ay wo alfari no.	H. 1. I'm a farmer.
2. Ay wo kurko no.	2. I'm a herdsman.
3. Ay wo zam no.	3. I'm a blacksmith.
4. Ay wo gako no.[1]	4. I'm a helper.
I. 1. I'ga wo alfari no.	I. 1. He's a farmer.
2. I'ga wo kurko no.	2. He's a herdsman.
3. I'ga wo zam no.	3. He's a blacksmith.
4. I'ga wo gako no.[1]	4. He's a helper.
J. 1. Bakari ga far no?	J. 1. Does Bakari farm?
2. Abdu ga far no?	2. Does Abdu farm?
3. Maman ga far no?	3. Does Maman farm?
4. Yakuba ga far no?	4. Does Yakuba farm?
K. 1. Bakari ga kuru no?	K. 1. Does Bakari herd?
2. Abdu ga kuru no?	2. Does Abdu herd?
3. Maman ga kuru no?	3. Does Maman herd?
4. Yakuba ga kuru no?	4. Does Yakuba herd?
L. 1. Bakari ga dan no?	L. 1. Does Bakari forge?
2. Abdu ga dan no?	2. Does Abdu forge?
3. Maman ga dan no?	3. Does Maman forge?
4. Yakuba ga dan no?	4. Does Yakuba forge?

M. 1. Ni ga far no?	M. 1. Do you farm?
2. Ni ga kuru no?	2. Do you herd?
3. Ni ga dan no?	3. Do you forge?
N. 1. Aran ga far no?	N. 1. Do you farm?
2. Aran ga kuru no?	2. Do you herd?
3. Aran ga dan no?	3. Do you forge?
O. 1. A ga far no?	O. 1. Does he farm?
2. A ga kuru no?	2. Does he herd?
3. A ga dan no?	3. Does he forge?
P. 1. I ga far no?	P. 1. Do they farm?
2. I ga kuru no?	2. Do they herd?
3. I ga dan no?	3. Do they forge?
Q. 1. Bakari ga far no.	Q. 1. Bakari farms.
2. Abdu ga far no.	2. Abdu farms.
3. Maman ga far no.	3. Maman farms.
4. Yakuba ga far no.	4. Yakuba farms.
R. 1. Bakari ga kuru no.	R. 1. Bakari herds.
2. Abdu ga kuru no.	2. Abdu herds.
3. Maman ga kuru no.	3. Maman herds.
4. Yakuba ga kuru no.	4. Yakuba herds.
S. 1. Ay ga far no.	S. 1. I farm.
2. Ay ga kuru no.	2. I herd.
3. Ay ga dan no.	3. I forge.
T. 1. Iri ga far no.	T. 1. We farm.
2. Iri ga kuru no.	2. We herd.
3. Iri ga dan no.	3. We forge.

U. 1. A ga far no.	U. 1. He farms.
2. A ga kura no.	2. He herds.
3. A ga dan no.	3. He forges.
V. 1. Goy fo no Bakari ga te?	V. 1. What work does Bakari do?
2. Goy fo no Abdu ga te?	2. What work does Abdu do?
3. Goy fo no Maman ga te?	3. What work does Maman do?
4. Goy fo no Yakuba ga te?	4. What work does Yakuba do?
W. 1. Goy fo no ni ga te?	W. 1. What work do you do?
2. Goy fo no aran ga te?	2. What work do you do?
3. Goy fo no a ga te?	3. What work does he do?
4. Goy fo no i ga te?	4. What work do they do?

Note on the Structural Drills

1. These expressions assume that the person referred to has already been mentioned in the conversation.

Phonology Drills

di	to catch, hold
A. 1. Ay na ni di.	A. 1. I've caught you.
di	to conceive
2. Tafa di.	2. The mare conceived.
dī	to see
3. A dī ni.	3. He saw you.
desi	ax (indef.)
B. 1. Abdu koy fari nda desi.	B. 1. Abdu went to the field with an ax.
dēsi	to fly
2. Tyurey dēsi.	2. The birds have flown away.

dam	to lay eggs
C. 1. Abdu gorn'a dam.	C. 1. Abdu's hen laid an egg.
dam	to feed (by force, for fattening)
2. Adamu go ga yowa dam.	2. Adamu is feeding the camel.
do	cricket (indef.)
D. 1. Ay koy do di.	D. 1. I went to catch crickets.
do	to reach (a goal)
2. Hawey do isa.	2. The cows reached the river.
dō	at, to the house of
3. Ay koy ni dō.	3. I went to your house.
dono	song (def.)
E. 1. Ni dono ga kan.	E. 1. Your song is pleasant.
dono	ball of millet (def.)
2. Ni na dono dibi?	2. Have you mixed the millet ball?
dōru	to be sick
F. 1. Manman Abdu dōru.	F. 1. Last year Abdu was sick.
dōru	to drop, spill
2. Amina wa dōru ga'da.	2. Amina's milk spilled on the ground.
du	to have, possess
G. 1. Ay du bari.	G. 1. I had a horse.
dū	du (a type of fish) (indef.)
2. Abdu na dū di haro ra.	2. Abdu caught a du in the water.
dū	millet chaff (indef.)
3. Ay na dū faru.	3. I separated the grains from the chaff.

UNIT 15

Structural Drills

A. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te alfari?	A. 1. How long has Bakari been a farmer?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu te alfari?	2. How long has Abdu been a farmer?
3. Za wati fo no Maman te alfari?	3. How long has Maman been a farmer?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te alfari?	4. How long has Yakuba been a farmer?
B. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te kurko?	B. 1. How long has Bakari been a herdsman?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu te kurko?	2. How long has Abdu been a herdsman?
3. Za wati fo no Maman te kurko?	3. How long has Maman been a herdsman?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te kurko?	4. How long has Yakuba been a herdsman?
C. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te zam?	C. 1. How long has Bakari been a blacksmith?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu te zam?	2. How long has Abdu been a blacksmith?
3. Za wati fo no Maman te zam?	3. How long has Maman been a blacksmith?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te zam?	4. How long has Yakuba been a blacksmith?
D. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te gake?[1]	D. 1. How long has Bakari been a helper?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu te gake?[1]	2. How long has Abdu been a helper?
3. Za wati fo no Maman te gake?[1]	3. How long has Maman been a helper?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te gake?[1]	4. How long has Yakuba been a helper?

E. 1. Za wati fo no ni te alfari?	E. 1. How long have you been a farmer?
2. Za wati fo no ni te kurko?	2. How long have you been a herdsman?
3. Za wati fo no ni te zam?	3. How long have you been a blacksmith?
4. Za wati fo no ni te gako?[1]	4. How long have you been a helper?
F. 1. Za wati fo no a te alfari?	F. 1. How long has he been a farmer?
2. Za wati fo no a te kurko?	2. How long has he been a herdsman?
3. Za wati fo no a te zam?	3. How long has he been a blacksmith?
4. Za wati fo no a te gako?[1]	4. How long has he been a helper?
G. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari go ga far?	G. 1. How long has Bakari been farming?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu go ga far?	2. How long has Abdu been farming?
3. Za wati fo no Maman go ga far?	3. How long has Maman been farming?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba go ga far?	4. How long has Yakuba been farming?
H. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari go ga kuru?	H. 1. How long has Bakari been herding?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu go ga kuru?	2. How long has Abdu been herding?
3. Za wati fo no Maman go ga kuru?	3. How long has Maman been herding?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba go ga kuru?	4. How long has Yakuba been herding?
I. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari go ga dan?	I. 1. How long has Bakari been forging?
2. Za wati fo no Abdu go ga dan?	2. How long has Abdu been forging?

3. Za wati fo no Maman go ga dan?	3. How long has Maman been forging?
4. Za wati fo no Yakuba go ga dan?	4. How long has Yakuba been forging?
J. 1. Za wati fo no ni go ga far?	J. 1. How long have you been farming?
2. Za wati fo no ni go ga kuru?	2. How long have you been herding?
3. Za wati fo no ni go ga dan?	3. How long have you been forging?
K. 1. Za wati fo no a go ga far?	K. 1. How long has he been farming?
2. Za wati fo no a go ga kuru?	2. How long has he been herding?
3. Za wati fo no a go ga dan?	3. How long has he been forging?
L. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay te alfari.	L. 1. I've been a farmer for a year.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay te alfari.	2. I've been a farmer for two years.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay te alfari.	3. I've been a farmer for three years.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay te alfari.	4. I've been a farmer for four years.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay te alfari.	5. I've been a farmer for five years.
M. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay te kurko.	M. 1. I've been a herdsman for a year.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay te kurko.	2. I've been a herdsman for two years.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay te kurko.	3. I've been a herdsman for three years.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay te kurko.	4. I've been a herdsman for four years.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay te kurko.	5. I've been a herdsman for five years.

N. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' a te zam.	N. 1. He's been a blacksmith for a year.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' a te zam.	2. He's been a blacksmith for two years.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' a te zam.	3. He's been a blacksmith for three years.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' a te zam.	4. He's been a blacksmith for four years.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' a te zam.	5. He's been a blacksmith for five years.
O. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay go ga far.	O. 1. I've been farming for a year.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay go ga far.	2. I've been farming for two years.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay go ga far.	3. I've been farming for three years.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay go ga far.	4. I've been farming for four years.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay go ga far.	5. I've been farming for five years.
P. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay go ga kuru.	P. 1. I've been herding for a year.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay go ga kuru.	2. I've been herding for two years.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay go ga kuru.	3. I've been herding for three years.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay go ga kuru.	4. I've been herding for four years.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay go ga kuru.	5. I've been herding for five years.

Q. 1. Dyiri fe ne ka' a ge ga dan.	Q. 1. He's been forging for a year.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' a ge ga dan.	2. He's been forging for two years.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' a ge ga dan.	3. He's been forging for three years.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' a ge ga dan.	4. He's been forging for four years.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' a ge ga dan.	5. He's been forging for five years.
R. 1. Bere fe ga ni ga? Ohe, ay go'da gako fe.	R. 1. Does someone help you? Yes, I have one helper.
2. Bere fe ga ni ga? Ohe, ay go'da gako hi'ka.	2. Does someone help you? Yes, I have two helpers.
3. Bere fe ga aran ga? Ohe, iri go'da gako hi'za.	3. Does someone help you? Yes, we have three helpers.
4. Bere fe ga a ga? Ohe, a go'da gako tatyi.	4. Does someone help him? Yes, he has four helpers.
5. Bere fe ga i ga? Ohe, i go'da gako gu.	5. Does someone help them? Yes, they have five helpers.
S. 1. Ni go'da gako ya'? Ohe, ay go'da gako hi'ka.	S. 1. Do you have helpers? Yes, I have two helpers.
2. Aran go'da gako ya'? Ohe, iri go'da gako hi'za.	2. Do you have helpers? Yes, we have three helpers.
3. A go'da gako ya'? Ohe, a go'da gako tatyi.	3. Does he have helpers? Yes, he has four helpers.
4. I go'da gako ya'? Ohe, i go'da gako gu.	4. Do they have helpers? Yes, they have five helpers.

T. 1. Bakari go ga far hu'kuna?	T. 1. Is Bakari farming today?
2. Abdu go ga far hu'kuna?	2. Is Abdu farming today?
3. Maman go ga far hu'kuna?	3. Is Maman farming today?
4. Yakuba go ga far hu'kuna?	4. Is Yakuba farming today?
U. 1. Bakari go ga kuru hu'kuna?	U. 1. Is Bakari herding today?
2. Abdu go ga kuru hu'kuna?	2. Is Abdu herding today?
3. Maman go ga kuru hu'kuna?	3. Is Maman herding today?
4. Yakuba go ga kuru hu'kuna?	4. Is Yakuba herding today?
V. 1. Bakari go ga dan hu'kuna?	V. 1. Is Bakari forging today?
2. Abdu go ga dan hu'kuna?	2. Is Abdu forging today?
3. Maman go ga dan hu'kuna?	3. Is Maman forging today?
4. Yakuba go ga dan hu'kuna?	4. Is Yakuba forging today?
W. 1. Ni go ga far hu'kuna?	W. 1. Are you farming today?
2. Ni go ga kuru hu'kuna?	2. Are you herding today?
3. Ni go ga dan hu'kuna?	3. Are you forging today?
X. 1. Aran go ga far hu'kuna?	X. 1. Are you farming today?
2. Aran go ga kuru hu'kuna?	2. Are you herding today?
3. Aran go ga dan hu'kuna?	3. Are you forging today?
Y. 1. A go ga far hu'kuna?	Y. 1. Is he farming today?
2. A go ga kuru hu'kuna?	2. Is he herding today?
3. A go ga dan hu'kuna?	3. Is he forging today?
Z. 1. I go ga far hu'kuna?	Z. 1. Are they farming today?
2. I go ga kuru hu'kuna?	2. Are they herding today?
3. I go ga dan hu'kuna?	3. Are they forging today?
AA. 1. Hu'kuna Bakari go ga far no.	AA. 1. Bakari is farming today.
2. Hu'kuna Abdu go ga far no.	2. Abdu is farming today.
3. Hu'kuna Maman go ga far no.	3. Maman is farming today.
4. Hu'kuna Yakuba go ga far no.	4. Yakuba is farming today.

BB. 1. Hu'kuna Bakari go ga kuru no.	BB. 1. Bakari is herding today.
2. Hu'kuna Abdu go ga kuru no.	2. Abdu is herding today.
3. Hu'kuna Maman go ga kuru no.	3. Maman is herding today.
4. Hu'kuna Yakuba go ga kuru no.	4. Yakuba is herding today.
CC. 1. Hu'kuna Bakari go ga dan no.	CC. 1. Bakari is forging today.
2. Hu'kuna Abdu go ga dan no.	2. Abdu is forging today.
3. Hu'kuna Maman go ga dan no.	3. Maman is forging today.
4. Hu'kuna Yakuba go ga dan no.	4. Yakuba is forging today.
DD. 1. Hu'kuna ay go ga far no.	DD. 1. I'm farming today.
2. Hu'kuna ay go ga kuru no.	2. I'm herding today.
3. Hu'kuna ay go ga dan no.	3. I'm forging today.
EE. 1. Hu'kuna iri go ga far no.	EE. 1. We're farming today.
2. Hu'kuna iri go ga kuru no.	2. We're herding today.
3. Hu'kuna iri go ga dan no.	3. We're forging today.
FF. 1. Hu'kuna a go ga far no.	FF. 1. He's farming today.
2. Hu'kuna a go ga kuru no.	2. He's herding today.
3. Hu'kuna a go ga dan no.	3. He's forging today.
GG. 1. Hu'kuna i go ga far no.	GG. 1. They're farming today.
2. Hu'kuna i go ga kuru no.	2. They're herding today.
3. Hu'kuna i go ga dan no.	3. They're forging today.
HH. 1. Boro mardye no go ga Bakari ga?	HH. 1. How many men are helping Bakari?
2. Boro mardye no go ga Abdu ga?	2. How many men are helping Abdu?
3. Boro mardye no go ga Maman ga?	3. How many men are helping Maman?
4. Boro mardye no go ga Yakuba ga?	4. How many men are helping Yakuba?

II. 1.	Boro mardye no go ga ni ga?	II. 1.	How many men are helping you?
2.	Boro mardye no go ga aran ga?	2.	How many men are helping you?
3.	Boro mardye no go ga a ga?	3.	How many men are helping him?
4.	Boro mardye no go ga i ga?	4.	How many men are helping them?
JJ. 1.	Boro hi'ka no go ga Bakari ga.	JJ. 1.	Two men are helping Bakari.
2.	Boro hi'ka no go ga Abdu ga.	2.	Two men are helping Abdu.
3.	Boro hi'ka no go ga Maman ga.	3.	Two men are helping Maman.
4.	Boro hi'ka no go ga Yakuba ga.	4.	Two men are helping Yakuba.
KK. 1.	Boro hi'za no go ga Bakari ga.	KK. 1.	Three men are helping Bakari.
2.	Boro hi'za no go ga Abdu ga.	2.	Three men are helping Abdu.
3.	Boro hi'za no go ga Maman ga.	3.	Three men are helping Maman.
4.	Boro hi'za no go ga Yakuba ga.	4.	Three men are helping Yakuba.
LL. 1.	Boro tatyi no go ga Bakari ga.	LL. 1.	Four men are helping Bakari.
2.	Boro tatyi no go ga Abdu ga.	2.	Four men are helping Abdu.
3.	Boro tatyi no go ga Maman ga.	3.	Four men are helping Maman.
4.	Boro tatyi no go ga Yakuba ga.	4.	Four men are helping Yakuba.
MM. 1.	Boro gu no go ga Bakari ga.	MM. 1.	Five men are helping Bakari.
2.	Boro gu no go ga Abdu ga.	2.	Five men are helping Abdu.
3.	Boro gu no go ga Maman ga.	3.	Five men are helping Maman.
4.	Boro gu no go ga Yakuba ga.	4.	Five men are helping Yakuba.
NN. 1.	Boro hi'ka no go ga ay ga.	NN. 1.	Two men are helping me.
2.	Boro hi'za no go ga ay ga.	2.	Three men are helping me.
3.	Boro tatyi no go ga ay ga.	3.	Four men are helping me.
4.	Boro gu no go ga ay ga.	4.	Five men are helping me.
OO. 1.	Boro hi'ka no go ga iri ga.	OO. 1.	Two men are helping us.
2.	Boro hi'za no go ga iri ga.	2.	Three men are helping us.
3.	Boro tatyi no go ga iri ga.	3.	Four men are helping us.
4.	Boro gu no go ga iri ga.	4.	Five men are helping us.

PP. 1. Bore hi'ka no go ga a ga.	PP. 1. Two men are helping him.
2. Bore hi'za no go ga a ga.	2. Three men are helping him.
3. Bore tatyi no go ga a ga.	3. Four men are helping him.
4. Bore gu no go ga a ga.	4. Five men are helping him.
QQ. 1. Bore hi'ka no go ga i ga.	QQ. 1. Two men are helping them.
2. Boro hi'za no go ga i ga.	2. Three men are helping them.
3. Bore tatyi no go ga i ga.	3. Four men are helping them.
4. Bore gu no go ga i ga.	4. Five men are helping them.
RR. 1. I fo no Bakari go ga te hu'kuna?	RR. 1. What is Bakari doing today?
2. I fo no Abdu go ga te hu'kuna?	2. What is Abdu doing today?
3. I fo no Maman go ga te hu'kuna?	3. What is Maman doing today?
4. I fo no Yakuba go ga te hu'kuna?	4. What is Yakuba doing today?
SS. 1. I fo no ni go ga te hu'kuna?	SS. 1. What are you doing today?
2. I fo no aran go ga te hu'kuna?	2. What are you doing today?
3. I fo no a go ga te hu'kuna?	3. What is he doing today?
4. I fo no i go ga te hu'kuna?	4. What are they doing today?
TT. 1. Bakari go ga far no hu'kuna.	TT. 1. Bakari is farming today.
2. Abdu go ga far no hu'kuna.	2. Abdu is farming today.
3. Maman go ga far no hu'kuna.	3. Maman is farming today.
4. Yakuba go ga far no hu'kuna.	4. Yakuba is farming today.
UU. 1. Bakari go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	UU. 1. Bakari is herding today.
2. Abdu go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	2. Abdu is herding today.
3. Maman go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	3. Maman is herding today.
4. Yakuba go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	4. Yakuba is herding today.
VV. 1. Bakari go ga dan no hu'kuna.	VV. 1. Bakari is forging today.
2. Abdu go ga dan no hu'kuna.	2. Abdu is forging today.
3. Maman go ga dan no hu'kuna.	3. Maman is forging today.
4. Yakuba go ga dan no hu'kuna.	4. Yakuba is forging today.

WW. 1. Ay go ga far no hu'kuna.	WW. 1. I'm farming today.
2. Ay go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	2. I'm herding today.
3. Ay go ga dan no hu'kuna.	3. I'm forging today.
XX. 1. Iri go ga far no hu'kuna.	XX. 1. We're farming today.
2. Iri go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	2. We're herding today.
3. Iri go ga dan no hu'kuna.	3. We're forging today.
YY. 1. A go ga far no hu'kuna.	YY. 1. He's farming today.
2. A go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	2. He's herding today.
3. A go ga dan no hu'kuna.	3. He's forging today.
ZZ. 1. I go ga far no hu'kuna.	ZZ. 1. They're farming today.
2. I go ga kuru no hu'kuna.	2. They're herding today.
3. I go ga dan no hu'kuna.	3. They're forging today.
AAA. 1. May no go ga ni ga? Bakari no go ga ay ga.	AAA. 1. Who's helping you? Bakari's helping me.
2. May no go ga aran ga? Abdu no go ga iri ga.	2. Who's helping you? Abdu's helping us.
3. May no go ga a ga? Maman no go ga a ga.	3. Who's helping him? Maman's helping him.
4. May no go ga i ga? Yakuba no go ga i ga.	4. Who's helping them? Yakuba's helping them.

Note on the Structural Drills

1. These expressions assume that the person referred to has already been mentioned in the conversation.

Phonology Drills

ka	to arrive
A. 1. Son'o no ay ka.	A. 1. I arrived (just) now.

ka	white horse (def./indef.)
2. Abdu go'da ka hanno.	2. Abdu has a pretty white horse.
ka	to take out
3. Ay na hamo ka kuso ra.	3. I took the meat out of the pot.
ko	child (def./indef.)
B. 1. Man ay ko koy?	B. 1. Where has my child gone?
ko	ko (the baobab tree) (def./indef.)
2. Bibata na ko foy te.	2. Bibata made a ko sauce.
ko	to stop (of rain)
3. Son'e no haro ko.	3. The rain has stopped now.
kom	thick (def./indef. sg.)
C. 1. Bibata foyo kom.	C. 1. Bibata's sauce is thick.
kom	to seize by force
2. Abdu na Maman kom ham.	2. Abdu seized Maman's meat by force.
koy	to go, leave
D. 1. Maman koy habu.	D. 1. Maman went to the market.
koy	chief, head (indef.)
2. Irkoy ga ti koy.	2. God is the chief.
koy	owner (indef.)
3. Ay ga ti fedyi koy.	3. I'm the owner of the sheep.
kwara	house (def./indef.)
E. 1. Ay go ga koy ni kwara.	E. 1. I'm going to your house.
kwāra	village (def./indef.)
2. Aran kwāra ga beri.	2. Your village is big.

UNIT 16

Dialogue 1

i fo	what
duma	to sow
A: I fo no ni ga duma ni farey ra?	A: What do you sow in your fields?
hayni	millet (indef. sg.)
damsi	peanut (indef. sg.)
kolkoti	maize (indef. sg.)
B: Hayni nda damsi nda kolkoti no ay ga duma.	B: I sow millet, peanuts, and maize.
A: Wati fo no ni ga damsi duma?	A: When will you sow peanuts?
ha'do	month (def.)
B: Ha'do ka' ga kay[1] no ay ga duma.	B: I'll sow next month.
bobo	a lot, much, many
A: Ni ga hayni bobo duma?	A: Do you sow a lot of millet?
kayna	a little, a few
B: Ha'a, hayni kayna no ay ga duma.	B: No, I sow (only) a little millet.

Dialogue 2

si'dyi	to plant
A: I fo no Bakari ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?	A: What does Bakari plant in his fields?
rogo	cassava (indef. sg.)
kudaku	sweet potato (indef. sg.)
po'piter[2]	potato (def./indef. sg.)
B: Rogo nda kudaku nda po'piter no a ga si'dyi.	B: He plants cassava, sweet potatoes, and potatoes.

A: Wati fe no a ga pe'piter si'dyi?	A: When will he plant potatoes?
B: Ha'do ka' ga kay no a ga si'dyi.	B: He'll plant next month.

Dialogue 3

A: I fe no Abdu nda Maman ga duma i'gey farey ra?	A: What do Abdu and Maman sow in their fields?
B: Kelkoti me i ga duma.	B: They sow maize.

Dialogue 4

ma	(signals the Past when the object precedes the verb)
A: Ni ma rego nda kudaku si'dyi?	A: Have you planted cassava and sweet potatoes?
bu	to die
B: Oho, ha'de ka' bu[1] no ay si'dyi.	B: Yes, I planted last month.
A: Ni ga pe'piter kayna si'dyi?	A: Do you plant only a few potatoes?
B: Ha'a, pe'piter bobo no ay ga si'dyi.	B: No, I plant a lot of potatoes.

Dialogue 5

A: Aran ma hayni nda damsi duma?	A: Have you sown millet and peanuts?
B: Oho, ha'do ka' bu no iri duma.	B: Yes, we sowed last month.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. Literally, ha'do ka' ga kay means "the month which is coming"; kay 'to step' is used only in this expression to replace ka 'to come.' Ha'do ka' bu means "the month which died."
2. Borrowed from the French pomme de terre.

Structural Drills

A. 1. I fo no Bakari ga duma i'ga farey ra?	A. 1. What does Bakari sow in his fields?
2. I fo no Abdu ga duma i'ga farey ra?	2. What does Abdu sow in his fields?
3. I fo no Maman ga duma i'ga farey ra?	3. What does Maman sow in his fields?
4. I fo no Yakuba ga duma i'ga farey ra?	4. What does Yakuba sow in his fields?
B. 1. I fo no ni ga duma ni farey ra?	B. 1. What do you sow in your fields?
2. I fo no aran ga duma aran farey ra?	2. What do you sow in your fields?
3. I fo no a ga duma i'ga farey ra?	3. What does he sow in his fields?
4. I fo no i ga duma i'gey farey ra?	4. What do they sow in their fields?
C. 1. I fo no Bakari ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?	C. 1. What does Bakari plant in his fields?
2. I fo no Abdu ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?	2. What does Abdu plant in his fields?
3. I fo no Maman ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?	3. What does Maman plant in his fields?
4. I fo no Yakuba ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?	4. What does Yakuba plant in his fields?

D. 1. I fe ne ni ga si'dyi ni farey ra?	D. 1. What do you plant in your fields?
2. I fe ne aran ga si'dyi aran farey ra?	2. What do you plant in your fields?
3. I fe ne a ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?	3. What does he plant in his fields?
4. I fe ne i ga si'dyi i'gey farey ra?	4. What do they plant in their fields?
E. 1. Hayni ne ay ga duma.	E. 1. I sew millet.
2. Damsi ne ay ga duma.	2. I sew peanuts.
3. Kelketi ne ay ga duma.	3. I sew maize.
F. 1. Hayni ne iri ga duma.	F. 1. We sow millet.
2. Damsi ne iri ga duma.	2. We sew peanuts.
3. Kelketi ne iri ga duma.	3. We sow maize.
G. 1. Hayni ne a ga duma.	G. 1. He sews millet.
2. Damsi ne a ga duma.	2. He sews peanuts.
3. Kelketi ne a ga duma.	3. He sews maize.
H. 1. Hayni ne i ga duma.	H. 1. They sew millet.
2. Damsi ne i ga duma.	2. They sew peanuts.
3. Kelketi ne i ga duma.	3. They sew maize.
I. 1. Kelketi ne ay ga duma.	I. 1. I sew maize.
2. Damsi nda kelketi ne ay ga duma.	2. I sew peanuts and maize.
3. Hayni nda damsi nda kelketi ne ay ga duma.	3. I sew millet, peanuts, and maize.

J. 1. Kolkoti no iri ga duma.	J. 1. We sew maize.
2. Damsi nda kolkoti no iri ga duma.	2. We sew peanuts and maize.
3. Hayni nda damsi nda kolkoti no iri ga duma.	3. We sew millet, peanuts, and maize.
K. 1. Rogo no ay ga si'dyi.	K. 1. I plant cassava.
2. Kudaku no ay ga si'dyi.	2. I plant sweet potatoes.
3. Po'piter no ay ga si'dyi.	3. I plant potatoes.
L. 1. Rogo no iri ga si'dyi.	L. 1. We plant cassava.
2. Kudaku no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant sweet potatoes.
3. Po'piter no iri ga si'dyi.	3. We plant potatoes.
M. 1. Rogo no a ga si'dyi.	M. 1. He plants cassava.
2. Kudaku no a ga si'dyi.	2. He plants sweet potatoes.
3. Po'piter no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants potatoes.
N. 1. Rogo no i ga si'dyi.	N. 1. They plant cassava.
2. Kudaku no i ga si'dyi.	2. They plant sweet potatoes.
3. Po'piter no i ga si'dyi.	3. They plant potatoes.
O. 1. Po'piter no ay ga si'dyi.	O. 1. I plant potatoes.
2. Kudaku nda po'piter no ay ga si'dyi.	2. I plant sweet potatoes and potatoes.
3. Rogo nda kudaku nda po'piter no ay ga si'dyi.	3. I plant cassava, sweet potatoes, and potatoes.
P. 1. Po'piter no iri ga si'dyi.	P. 1. We plant potatoes.
2. Kudaku nda po'piter no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant sweet potatoes and potatoes.
3. Rogo nda kudaku nda po'piter no iri ga si'dyi.	3. We plant cassava, sweet potatoes, and potatoes.

Q. 1. Wati fo no ni ga hayni duma?	Q. 1. When will you sow millet?
2. Wati fo no aran ga hayni duma?	2. When will you sow millet?
3. Wati fo no a ga hayni duma?	3. When will he sow millet?
4. Wati fo no i ga hayni duma?	4. When will they sow millet?
R. 1. Wati fo no ni ga damsi duma?	R. 1. When will you sow peanuts?
2. Wati fo no aran ga damsi duma?	2. When will you sow peanuts?
3. Wati fo no a ga damsi duma?	3. When will he sow peanuts?
4. Wati fo no i ga damsi duma?	4. When will they sow peanuts?
S. 1. Wati fo no ni ga kolkoti duma?	S. 1. When will you sow maize?
2. Wati fo no aran ga kolkoti duma?	2. When will you sow maize?
3. Wati fo no a ga kolkoti duma?	3. When will he sow maize?
4. Wati fo no i ga kolkoti duma?	4. When will they sow maize?
T. 1. Wati fo no ni ga rogo si'dyi?	T. 1. When will you plant cassava?
2. Wati fo no aran ga rogo si'dyi?	2. When will you plant cassava?
3. Wati fo no a ga rogo si'dyi?	3. When will he plant cassava?
4. Wati fo no i ga rogo si'dyi?	4. When will they plant cassava?
U. 1. Wati fo no ni ga kudaku si'dyi?	U. 1. When will you plant sweet potatoes?
2. Wati fo no aran ga kudaku si'dyi?	2. When will you plant sweet potatoes?
3. Wati fo no a ga kudaku si'dyi?	3. When will he plant sweet potatoes?
4. Wati fo no i ga kudaku si'dyi?	4. When will they plant sweet potatoes?
V. 1. Wati fo no ni ga po'piter si'dyi?	V. 1. When will you plant potatoes?
2. Wati fo no aran ga po'piter si'dyi?	2. When will you plant potatoes?

3. Wati fo no a ga po'piter si'dyi?	3. When will he plant potatoes?
4. Wati fo no i ga po'piter si'dyi?	4. When will they plant potatoes?

Phonology Drills

ga	to help
A. 1. Ay na Abdu ga farmi.	A. 1. I helped Abdu farm.
ga	enclosure (for animals) (indef.)
2. Hawey go ga.	2. The cows are in the enclosure.
ga	(sign of the Future)
3. Suba ay ga naru.	3. I'll travel tomorrow.
ga	to, on
4. Mi ga no ay go.	4. I'm talking to you.
garu	crow (indef.)
B. 1. Abdu na garu di.	B. 1. Abdu caught a crow.
garu	banco house (indef.)
2. Maman na garu tyina.	2. Maman built a banco house.
goro	sit down!
C. 1. Goro ga ma!	C. 1. Sit down and listen!
gōro	cola nut (indef.)
2. Ay no goro.	2. Give me a cola nut.
gōru	to prick, stab
D. 1. Lokotoro na ay goru.	D. 1. The doctor inoculated me.

gōru	valley (indef.)
2. Gōru go ni dyini.	2. The valley is in front of you.
gōru	to increase above normal
3. Hamo gōru kuso ra.	3. The meat in the pot has increased.
gusu	hole (indef.)
E. 1. Ay tya ka' gusu ra.	E. 1. My foot fell into a hole.
gūsu	deep (def./indef. sg.)
2. Aran deyo ga gūsu.	2. Your well is deep.

UNIT 17

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni na rogo si'dyi?	A. 1. Have you planted cassava?
2. Ni na kudaku si'dyi?	2. Have you planted sweet potatoes?
3. Ni na po'piter si'dyi?	3. Have you planted potatoes?
B. 1. Aran na roge si'dyi?	B. 1. Have you planted cassava?
2. Aran na kudaku si'dyi?	2. Have you planted sweet potatoes?
3. Aran na po'piter si'dyi?	3. Have you planted potatoes?
C. 1. A na rogo si'dyi?	C. 1. Has he planted cassava?
2. A na kudaku si'dyi?	2. Has he planted sweet potatees?
3. A na po'piter si'dyi?	3. Has he planted potatees?
D. 1. I na rogo si'dyi?	D. 1. Have they planted cassava?
2. I na kudaku si'dyi?	2. Have they planted sweet potatees?
3. I na po'piter si'dyi?	3. Have they planted potatees?
E. 1. Ni na hayni duma?	E. 1. Have you sown millet?
2. Ni na damsi duma?	2. Have you sown peanuts?
3. Ni na kolkoti duma?	3. Have you sown maize?
F. 1. Aran na hayni duma?	F. 1. Have you sown millet?
2. Aran na damsi duma?	2. Have you sown peanuts?
3. Aran na kolkoti duma?	3. Have you sown maize?
G. 1. A na hayni duma?	G. 1. Has he sown millet?
2. A na damsi duma?	2. Has he sown peanuts?
3. A na kolkoti duma?	3. Has he sown maize?
H. 1. I na hayni duma?	H. 1. Have they sown millet?
2. I na damsi duma?	2. Have they sown peanuts?
3. I na kolkoti duma?	3. Have they sown maize?

I. 1. Ha'do ka' ga kay no ay ga duma.	I. 1. I'll sow next month.
2. Ha'do ka' ga kay no iri ga duma.	2. We'll sow next month.
3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no a ga duma.	3. He'll sow next month.
4. Ha'do ka' ga kay no i ga duma.	4. They'll sow next month.
J. 1. Ha'do ka' ga kay no ay ga si'dyi.	J. 1. I'll plant next month.
2. Ha'do ka' ga kay no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We'll plant next month.
3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no a ga si'dyi.	3. He'll plant next month.
4. Ha'do ka' ga kay no i ga si'dyi.	4. They'll plant next month.
K. 1. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Bakari ga duma.	K. 1. Bakari will sow next month.
2. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Abdu ga duma.	2. Abdu will sow next month.
3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Maman ga duma.	3. Maman will sow next month.
4. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Yakuba ga duma.	4. Yakuba will sow next month.
L. 1. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Bakari ga si'dyi.	L. 1. Bakari will plant next month.
2. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Abdu ga si'dyi.	2. Abdu will plant next month.
3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Maman ga si'dyi.	3. Maman will plant next month.
4. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Yakuba ga si'dyi.	4. Yakuba will plant next month.

M. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no ay duma.	M. 1. I sowed last month.
2. Ha'do ka' bu no iri duma.	2. We sowed last month.
3. Ha'do ka' bu no a duma.	3. He sowed last month.
4. Ha'do ka' bu no i duma.	4. They sowed last month.
N. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no ay si'dyi.	N. 1. I planted last month.
2. Ha'do ka' bu no iri si'dyi.	2. We planted last month.
3. Ha'do ka' bu no a si'dyi.	3. He planted last month.
4. Ha'do ka' bu no i si'dyi.	4. They planted last month.
O. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no Bakari duma.	O. 1. Bakari sowed last month.
2. Ha'do ka' bu no Abdu duma.	2. Abdu sowed last month.
3. Ha'do ka' bu no Mamam duma.	3. Maman sowed last month.
4. Ha'do ka' bu no Yakuba duma.	4. Yakuba sowed last month.
P. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no Bakari si'dyi.	P. 1. Bakari planted last month.
2. Ha'do ka' bu no Abdu si'dyi.	2. Abdu planted last month.
3. Ha'do ka' bu no Maman si'dyi.	3. Maman planted last month.
4. Ha'do ka' bu no Yakuba si'dyi.	4. Yakuba planted last month.
Q. 1. Ni ga hayni bobo duma?	Q. 1. Do you sow a lot of millet?
2. Aran ga hayni bobo duma?	2. Do you sow a lot of millet?
3. A ga hayni bobo duma?	3. Does he sow a lot of millet?
4. I ga hayni bobo duma?	4. Do they sow a lot of millet?
R. 1. Ni ga damsi bobo duma?	R. 1. Do you sow a lot of peanuts?
2. Aran ga damsi bobo duma?	2. Do you sow a lot of peanuts?
3. A ga damsi bobo duma?	3. Does he sow a lot of peanuts?
4. I ga damsi bobo duma?	4. Do they sow a lot of peanuts?
S. 1. Ni ga kolkoti bobo duma?	S. 1. Do you sow a lot of maize?
2. Aran ga kolkoti bobo duma?	2. Do you sow a lot of maize?
3. A ga kolkoti bobo duma?	3. Does he sow a lot of maize?
4. I ga kolkoti bobo duma?	4. Do they sow a lot of maize?

T. 1. Ni ga hayni kayna duma?	T. 1. Do you sow (only) a little millet?
2. Aran ga hayni kayna duma?	2. Do you sow (only) a little millet?
3. A ga hayni kayna duma?	3. Does he sow (only) a little millet?
4. I ga hayni kayna duma?	4. Do they sow (only) a little millet?
U. 1. Ni ga damsi kayna duma?	U. 1. Do you sow (only) a little peanuts?
2. Aran ga damsi kayna duma?	2. Do you sow (only) a little peanuts?
3. A ga damsi kayna duma?	3. Does he sow (only) a little peanuts?
4. I ga damsi kayna duma?	4. Do they sow (only) a little peanuts?
V. 1. Ni ga kolkoti kayna duma?	V. 1. Do you sow (only) a little maize?
2. Aran ga kolkoti kayna duma?	2. Do you sow (only) a little maize?
3. A ga kolkoti kayna duma?	3. Does he sow (only) a little maize?
4. I ga kolkoti kayna duma?	4. Do they sow (only) a little maize?
W. 1. Ni ga rogo bobo si'dyi?	W. 1. Do you plant a lot of cassava?
2. Aran ga rogo bobo si'dyi?	2. Do you plant a lot of cassava?
3. A ga rogo bobo si'dyi?	3. Does he plant a lot of cassava?
4. I ga rogo bobo si'dyi?	4. Do they plant a lot of cassava?

X. 1. Ni ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?	X. 1. Do you plant a lot of sweet potatoes?
2. Aran ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?	2. Do you plant a lot of sweet potatoes?
3. A ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?	3. Does he plant a lot of sweet potatoes?
4. I ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?	4. Do they plant a lot of sweet potatoes?
Y. 1. Ni ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?	Y. 1. Do you plant a lot of potatoes?
2. Aran ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?	2. Do you plant a lot of potatoes?
3. A ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?	3. Does he plant a lot of potatoes?
4. I ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?	4. Do they plant a lot of potatoes?
Z. 1. Ni ga rogo kayna si'dyi?	Z. 1. Do you plant (only) a little cassava?
2. Aran ga rogo kayna si'dyi?	2. Do you plant (only) a little cassava?
3. A ga rogo kayna si'dyi?	3. Does he plant (only) a little cassava?
4. I ga rogo kayna si'dyi?	4. Do they plant (only) a little cassava?
AA. 1. Ni ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?	AA. 1. Do you plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?
2. Aran ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?	2. Do you plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?
3. A ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?	3. Does he plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?
4. I ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?	4. Do they plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?
BB. 1. Ni ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?	BB. 1. Do you plant (only) a little potatoes?
2. Aran ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?	2. Do you plant (only) a little potatoes?

3. A ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?	3. Does he plant (only) a little potatoes?
4. I ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?	4. Do they plant (only) a little potatoes?
CC. 1. Hayni bobo no ay ga duma.	CC. 1. I sow a lot of millet.
2. Hayni bobo no iri ga duma.	2. We sow a lot of millet.
3. Hayni bobo no a ga duma.	3. He sows a lot of millet.
4. Hayni bobo no i ga duma.	4. They sow a lot of millet.
DD. 1. Damsi bobo no ay ga duma.	DD. 1. I sow a lot of peanuts.
2. Damsi bobo no iri ga duma.	2. We sow a lot of peanuts.
3. Damsi bobo no a ga duma.	3. He sows a lot of peanuts.
4. Damsi bobo no i ga duma.	4. They sow a lot of peanuts.
EE. 1. Kolkoti bobo no ay ga duma.	EE. 1. I sow a lot of maize.
2. Kolkoti bobo no iri ga duma.	2. We sow a lot of maize.
3. Kolkoti bobo no a ga duma.	3. He sows a lot of maize.
4. Kolkoti bobo no i ga duma.	4. They sow a lot of maize.
FF. 1. Hayni kayna no ay ga duma.	FF. 1. I sow (only) a little millet.
2. Hayni kayna no iri ga duma.	2. We sow (only) a little millet.
3. Hayni kayna no a ga duma.	3. He sows (only) a little millet.
4. Hayni kayna no i ga duma.	4. They sow (only) a little millet.
GG. 1. Damsi kayna no ay ga duma.	GG. 1. I sow (only) a little peanuts.
2. Damsi kayna no iri ga duma.	2. We sow (only) a little peanuts.
3. Damsi kayna no a ga duma.	3. He sows (only) a little peanuts.
4. Damsi kayna no i ga duma.	4. They sow (only) a little peanuts.
HH. 1. Kolkoti kayna no ay ga duma.	HH. 1. I sow (only) a little maize.
2. Kolkoti kayna no iri ga duma.	2. We sow (only) a little maize.
3. Kolkoti kayna no a ga duma.	3. He sows (only) a little maize.
4. Kolkoti kayna no i ga duma.	4. They sow (only) a little maize.

II. 1. Rogo bobo no ay ga si'dyi.	II. 1. I plant a lot of cassava.
2. Rogo bobo no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant a lot of cassava.
3. Rogo bobo no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants a lot of cassava.
4. Rogo bobo no i ga si'dyi.	4. They plant a lot of cassava.
JJ. 1. Kudaku bobo no ay ga si'dyi.	JJ. 1. I plant a lot of sweet potatoes.
2. Kudaku bobo no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant a lot of sweet potatoes.
3. Kudaku bobo no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants a lot of sweet potatoes.
4. Kudaku bobo no i ga si'dyi.	4. They plant a lot of sweet potatoes.
KK. 1. Pe'piter bobo no ay ga si'dyi.	KK. 1. I plant a lot of potatoes.
2. Pe'piter bobo no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant a lot of potatoes.
3. Pe'piter bobo no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants a lot of potatoes.
4. Pe'piter bobo no i ga si'dyi.	4. They plant a lot of potatoes.
LL. 1. Rogo kayna no ay ga si'dyi.	LL. 1. I plant (only) a little cassava.
2. Rogo kayna no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant (only) a little cassava.
3. Rogo kayna no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants (only) a little cassava.
4. Rogo kayna no i ga si'dyi.	4. They plant (only) a little cassava.
MM. 1. Kudaku kayna no ay ga si'dyi.	MM. 1. I plant (only) a little sweet potatoes.
2. Kudaku kayna no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant (only) a little sweet potatoes.
3. Kudaku kayna no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants (only) a little sweet potatoes.
4. Kudaku kayna no i ga si'dyi.	4. They plant (only) a little sweet potatoes.

NN. 1. Po'piter kayna no ay ga si'dyi.	NN. 1. I plant (only) a little potatoes.
2. Po'piter kayna no iri ga si'dyi.	2. We plant (only) a little potatoes.
3. Po'piter kayna no a ga si'dyi.	3. He plants (only) a little potatoes.
4. Po'piter kayna no i ga si'dyi.	4. They plant (only) a little potatoes.

Phonology Drills

fiti	nest (indef.)
A. 1. Musa na tyuro fiti ka.	A. 1. Musa took away a bird's nest.
fiti	to open
2. Ay no fuwo fiti.	2. I opened the house.
faru	to separate grains from chaff
B. 1. Bibata na hayno faru.	B. 1. Bibata separated the grains from the chaff.
faru	to sharpen a tool
2. Adamu na i'ga zama faru.	2. Adamu sharpened his knife.
fa'du	fan (indef.)
C. 1. Sa'bu fa'du ga ay feni.	C. 1. Take the fan and fan me.
fā'du	dune (indef.)
2. Ni fuwo go fā'du bo'.	2. Your house is on a dune.
fo	to greet
D. 1. Fo Abdu.	D. 1. Say hello to Abdu.
fo	alone, one
2. Ay fo no.	2. I'm alone.

fo	to offer condolence
3. Wa fo nda tilas.	3. My condolences.
fo	which one
4. Wofo ga ti Abdu wone?	4. Which one is Abdu's?
foy	sauce (indef.)
E. 1. Mamata na foy hina.	E. 1. Mamata cooked the sauce.
foy	to spend the day
2. Ay foy Tilaberi bi.	2. I spent the day at Tilaberi yesterday.
foy	to reproach
3. Ay na Abdu foy.	3. I reproached Abdu.
zi	to kick
F. 1. Bariyo na Abdu zi.	F. 1. The horse kicked Abdu.
zi	to swim
2. Amina go ga zi isa ra.	2. Amina is swimming in the river.

UNIT 18

Dialogue 1

son'o	now
kaydiya	rainy season (def./indef.)
A: Son'o kaydiya no?	A: Is it the rainy season now?
B: Ha'a.	B: No.
hayni	the hot part of the dry season (indef.)
wala	or
dyew	the cold part of the dry season (indef.)
A: Son'o hayni no wala dyew?	A: Is it the hot part or the cold part of the dry season now?
B: Son'o hayni no.	B: It's the hot part of the dry season now.
hayno	the hot part of the dry season (def.)
si'tin	to begin
A: Wati fo no hayno si'tin?	A: When did the hot part of the dry season begin?
ha'du	month (indef.)
B: Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a si'tin.	B: It began two months ago.
ban	to end
A: Wati fo no hayno ga ban?	A: When will the hot part of the dry season end?
B: Ha'du fo ra a ga ban.	B: It will end in one month.

Dialogue 2

dyewo	the cold part of the dry season (def.)
A: Wati fo no dyewo si'tin?	A: When did the cold part of the dry season begin?
B: Ha'du fo ne ka' a si'tin.	B: It began one month ago.
A: Wati fo no dyewo ga ban?	A: When will the cold part of the dry season end?
B: Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga ban.	B: It will end in two months.

Dialogue 3

A: Wati fo no hayno ban?	A: When did the hot part of the dry season end?
B: Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a ban.	B: It ended two months ago.

Dialogue 4

A: Wati fo no hayno ga si'tin?	A: When will the hot part of the dry season begin?
B: Ha'du fo ra a ga si'tin.	B: It will begin in one month.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Son'e kaydiya no?	A. 1. Is it the rainy season now?
2. Son'e hayni no?	2. Is it the hot part of the dry season now?
3. Son'e dyew no?	3. Is it the cold part of the dry season now?

B. 1. Son'o kaydiya no wala hayni?	B. 1. Is it the rainy season or the hot part of the dry season now?
2. Son'o hayni no wala dyew?	2. Is it the hot part or the cold part of the dry season now?
3. Son'o dyew no wala kaydiya?	3. Is it the cold part of the dry season or the rainy season now?
C. 1. Son'o kaydiya no.	C. 1. It's the rainy season now.
2. Son'o hayni no.	2. It's the hot part of the dry season now.
3. Son'o dyew no.	3. It's the cold part of the dry season now.
D. 1. Son'o kaydiya no wala hayni? Son'o kaydiya no.	B. 1. Is it the rainy season or the hot part of the dry season now? It's the rainy season now.
2. Son'o kaydiya no wala hayni? Som'o hayni no.	2. Is it the rainy season or the hot part of the dry season now? It's the hot part of the dry season now.
3. Son'o hayni no wala dyew? Son'o hayni no.	3. Is it the hot part or the cold part of the dry season now? It's the hot part of the dry season now.
4. Son'o hayni no wala dyew? Son'o dyew no.	4. Is it the hot part or the cold part of the dry season now? It's the cold part of the dry season now.
5. Son'o dyew no wala kaydiya? Son'o dyew no.	5. Is it the cold part of the dry season or the rainy season now? It's the cold part of the dry season now.
6. Son'o dyew no wala kaydiya? Son'o kaydiya no.	6. Is it the cold part of the dry season or the rainy season now? It's the rainy season now.

E. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya si'tin?	E. 1. When did the rainy season begin?
2. Wati fo no hayne si'tin?	2. When did the hot part of the dry season begin?
3. Wati fo ne dyewo si'tin?	3. When did the cold part of the dry season begin?
F. 1. Wati fo ne kaydiya ga si'tin?	F. 1. When will the rainy season begin?
2. Wati fo ne hayne ga si'tin?	2. When will the hot part of the dry season begin?
3. Wati fo no dyewo ga si'tin?	3. When will the cold part of the dry season begin?
G. 1. Wati fo ne kaydiya ban?	G. 1. When did the rainy season end?
2. Wati fo ne hayne ban?	2. When did the hot part of the dry season end?
3. Wati fo no dyewo ban?	3. When did the cold part of the dry season end?
H. 1. Wati fo ne kaydiya ga ban?	H. 1. When will the rainy season end?
2. Wati fo ne hayne ga ban?	2. When will the hot part of the dry season end?
3. Wati fo ne dyewo ga ban?	3. When will the cold part of the dry season end?
I. 1. Ha'du fo ne ka' a si'tin.	I. 1. It began one month ago.
2. Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a si'tin.	2. It began two months ago.
3. Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a si'tin.	3. It began three months ago.
J. 1. Ha'du fo ra a ga si'tin.	J. 1. It will begin in one month.
2. Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga si'tin.	2. It will begin in two months.
3. Ha'du hi'za ra a ga si'tin.	3. It will begin in three months.
K. 1. Ha'du fo ne ka' a ban.	K. 1. It ended one month ago.
2. Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a ban.	2. It ended two months ago.
3. Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a ban.	3. It ended three months ago.

L. 1. Ha'du fo ra a ga ban.	L. 1. It will end in one month.
2. Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga ban.	2. It will end in two months.
3. Ha'du hi'za ra a ga ban.	3. It will end in three months.
M. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya si'tin?	M. 1. When did the rainy season begin?
Ha'du fo ne ka' a si'tin.	It began one month ago.
2. Wati fo no hayno si'tin?	2. When did the hot part of the dry season begin?
Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a si'tin.	It began two months ago.
3. Wati fo no dyewo si'tin?	3. When did the cold part of the dry season begin?
Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a si'tin.	It began three months ago.
N. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya ga si'tin?	N. 1. When will the rainy season begin?
Ha'du fo ra a ga si'tin.	It will begin in one month.
2. Wati fo no hayno ga si'tin?	2. When will the hot part of the dry season begin?
Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga si'tin.	It will begin in two months.
3. Wati fo no dyewo ga si'tin?	3. When will the cold part of the dry season begin?
Ha'du hi'za ra a ga si'tin.	It will begin in three months.
O. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya ban?	O. 1. When did the rainy season end?
Ha'du fo ne ka' a ban.	It ended one month ago.
2. Wati fo no hayno ban?	2. When did the hot part of the dry season end?
Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a ban.	It ended two months ago.
3. Wati fo no dyewo ban?	3. When did the cold part of the dry season end?
Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a ban.	It ended three months ago.

P. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya ga ban?	P. 1. When will the rainy season end?
Ha'du fo ra a ga ban.	It will end in one month.
2. Wati fo no hayno ga ban?	2. When will the hot part of the dry season end?
Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga ban.	It will end in two months.
3. Wati fo no dyewo ga ban?	3. When will the cold part of the dry season end?
Ha'du hi'za ra a ga ban.	It will end in three months.

Phonology Drills

hima	to have to, must
A. 1. Ni hima ga ka.	A. 1. You must come.
hima	to resemble
2. Abdu ga hima Maman.	2. Abdu resembles Maman.
Hima	Hima (a male proper name)
3. Hima koy Doso.	3. Hima went to Doso.
hima	to cook
B. 1. Amina na hawro hima.	B. 1. Amina cooked the porridge.
hīma	power (def./indef.)
2. Irkoy go'da hīma.	2. God has power.
hirri	adjoining (def./indef. sg.)
C. 1. Abdu nda Maman farey no ga hirri.	C. 1. Abdu and Maman's fields are adjoining.
hirri.	to set (a trap)
2. Ay na kumsa hirri.	2. I set a trap.
hirri	to be cloud-covered
3. Bena hirri hu'kuna.	3. The sky is covered with clouds today.

ham	meat (indef.)
D. 1. Aysa na ham hina.	D. 1. Aysa cooked the meat.
ham	to touch
2. Ay na de'dyi ham.	2. I touched the fire.
hamni	fly (indef.)
E. 1. Hamni zumbu ni ga.	E. 1. A fly landed on you.
hamni	hair (indef.)
2. Bibata go'da hamni bobo.	2. Bibata has lots of hair.
hamnī	flour (indef.)
3. Hayni hamnī ne.	3. There is the millet flour.
hari	water, rain (indef.)
F. 1. Hari go ga ka!	F. 1. Rain is falling.
hari	an object (indef.)
2. Hari fo no?	2. What is the object?
hāri	to laugh
3. Nan hāri.	3. Stop laughing.

UNIT 19

Dialogue 1

haw	cow (indef.)
se	with
A: Haw mardye no ni se?	A: How many cows do you have?
iddu	six
B: Haw[1] iddu no ay se.	B: I have six cows.
bari	horse (indef.)
A: Ni go'da bari?	A: Do you have a horse?
B: Ha'a, ay si'da bari.	B: No, I don't have a horse.
amma	but
yo	camel (indef.)
Amma ay go'da yo.	But I have a camel.

Dialogue 2

mannan	last year
gorn'e	chicken (indef.)
A: Mannan gorn'e mardye no ni se?	A: How many chickens did you have last year?
iye	seven
ahakku	eight
goro	to remain, dwell
B: Gorn'e iye wala ahakku no goro ay se.	B: I had seven or eight chickens.
A: Mannan ni goro nda haw ya'?	A: Did you have cows last year?
B: Ha'a, ay mana goro nda haw ya'.	B: No, I didn't have cows.
hi'tyin	goat (indef.)
Amma ay goro nda hi'tyin ya'.	But I had goats.

Dialogue 3

yesi	next year
du	to have, possess
A: Yesi bari mardye no ni ga du?	A: How many horses will you have next year?
yegga	nine
woy	ten
B: Bari yegga wala i[2] woy no ay ga du.	B: I'll have nine or ten horses.
A: Yesi ni ga du hi'tyin ya'?	A: Will you have goats next year?
B: Ha'a, ay si du hi'tyin ya'.	B: No, I won't have goats.
fedyi	sheep (indef. sg.)
Amma ay ga du fedyi ya'.	But I'll have sheep.

Dialogue 4

A: Yesi bari mardye no ni ga du?	A: How many horses will you have next year?
B: Bari woy no ay ga du.	B: I'll have ten horses.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. Like adjectives, numbers follow the noun, which takes the indefinite form. With numbers the noun also retains the singular form.
2. When separated from the noun it modifies, woy 'ten' must be preceded by i.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Haw mardye no ni se?	A. 1. How many cows do you have?
2. Bari mardye no ni se?	2. How many horses do you have?
3. Yo mardye no ni se?	3. How many camels do you have?

B. 1. Gorm'o mardye no aran se?	B. 1. How many chickens do you have?
2. Hi'tyim mardye no aran se?	2. How many goats do you have?
3. Fedyi mardye no aran se?	3. How many sheep do you have?
C. 1. Haw mardye no a se?	C. 1. How many cows does he have?
2. Bari mardye no a se?	2. How many horses does he have?
3. Yo mardye no a se?	3. How many camels does he have?
D. 1. Gorm'o mardye no i se?	D. 1. How many chickens do they have?
2. Hi'tyim mardye no i se?	2. How many goats do they have?
3. Fedyi mardye no i se?	3. How many sheep do they have?
E. 1. Mannan haw mardye no ni se?	E. 1. How many cows did you have last year?
2. Mannan bari mardye no ni se?	2. How many horses did you have last year?
3. Mannan yo mardye no ni se?	3. How many camels did you have last year?
F. 1. Mannan gorm'o mardye no aran se?	F. 1. How many chickens did you have last year?
2. Mannan hi'tyim mardye no aran se?	2. How many goats did you have last year?
3. Mannan fedyi mardye no aran se?	3. How many sheep did you have last year?
G. 1. Mannan haw mardye no a se?	G. 1. How many cows did he have last year?
2. Mannan bari mardye no a se?	2. How many horses did he have last year?
3. Mannan yo mardye no a se?	3. How many camels did he have last year?

H. 1. Mannan gorn'o mardye ne i se?	H. 1. How many chickens did they have last year?
2. Mannan hi'tyin mardye ne i se?	2. How many goats did they have last year?
3. Mannan fedyi mardye ne i se?	3. How many sheep did they have last year?
I. 1. Yesi haw mardye ne ni ga du?	I. 1. How many cows will you have next year?
2. Yesi bari mardye ne ni ga du?	2. How many horses will you have next year?
3. Yesi yo mardye ne ni ga du?	3. How many camels will you have next year?
J. 1. Yesi gorn'o mardye ne aran ga du?	J. 1. How many chickens will you have next year?
2. Yesi hi'tyin mardye ne aran ga du?	2. How many goats will you have next year?
3. Yesi fedyi mardye no aran ga du?	3. How many sheep will you have next year?
K. 1. Yesi haw mardye no a ga du?	K. 1. How many cows will he have next year?
2. Yesi bari mardye no a ga du?	2. How many horses will he have next year?
3. Yesi yo mardye no a ga du?	3. How many camels will he have next year?
L. 1. Yesi gorn'o mardye ne i ga du?	L. 1. How many chickens will they have next year?
2. Yesi hi'tyin mardye no i ga du?	2. How many goats will they have next year?
3. Yesi fedyi mardye no i ga du?	3. How many sheep will they have next year?

fo	'one'	iddu	'six'
hi'ka	'two'	iye	'seven'
hi'za	'three'	ahakku	'eight'
tatyi	'four'	yegga	'nine'
gu	'five'	woy	'ten'

M. 1. Haw iddu no ay se.	M. 1. I have six cows.
2. Haw iye no ay se.	2. I have seven cows.
3. Haw ahakku no ay se.	3. I have eight cows.
N. 1. Bari ahakku no iri se.	N. 1. We have eight horses.
2. Bari yegga no iri se.	2. We have nine horses.
3. Bary woy no iri se.	3. We have ten horses.
O. 1. Yo iddu no a se.	O. 1. He has six camels.
2. Yo iye no a se.	2. He has seven camels.
3. Yo ahakku no a se.	3. He has eight camels.
P. 1. Gorn'o ahakku no i se.	P. 1. They have eight chickens.
2. Gorn'o yegga no i se.	2. They have nine chickens.
3. Gorn'o woy no i se.	3. They have ten chickens.
Q. 1. Hi'tyin iddu no goro ay se.	Q. 1. I had six goats.
2. Hi'tyin iye no goro ay se.	2. I had seven goats.
3. Hi'tyin ahakku no goro ay se.	3. I had eight goats.
R. 1. Fedyi ahakku no goro iri se.	R. 1. We had eight sheep.
2. Fedyi yegga no goro iri se.	2. We had nine sheep.
3. Fedyi woy no goro iri se.	3. We had ten sheep.
S. 1. Haw iddu no goro a se.	S. 1. He had six cows.
2. Haw iye no goro a se.	2. He had seven cows.
3. Haw ahakku no goro a se.	3. He had eight cows.
T. 1. Bari ahakku no goro i se.	T. 1. They had eight horses.
2. Bari yegga no goro i se.	2. They had nine horses.
3. Bari woy no goro i se.	3. They had ten horses.

U. 1. Yo iddu no ay ga du.	U. 1. I'll have six camels.
2. Yo iye no ay ga du.	2. I'll have seven camels.
3. Yo ahakku no ay ga du.	3. I'll have eight camels.
V. 1. Gorn'o ahakku no iri ga du.	V. 1. We'll have eight chickens.
2. Gorn'o yegga no iri ga du.	2. We'll have nine chickens.
3. Gorn'o woy no iri ga du.	3. We'll have ten chickens.
W. 1. Hi'tyin iddu no a ga du.	W. 1. He'll have six goats.
2. Hi'tyin iye no a ga du.	2. He'll have seven goats.
3. Hi'tyin ahakku no a ga du.	3. He'll have eight goats.
X. 1. Fedyi ahakku no i ga du.	X. 1. They'll have eight sheep.
2. Fedyi yegga no i ga du.	2. They'll have nine sheep.
3. Fedyi woy no i ga du.	3. They'll have ten sheep.
Y. 1. Haw iddu wala iye no goro ay se.	Y. 1. I had six or seven cows.
2. Haw iye wala ahakku no goro ay se.	2. I had seven or eight cows.
3. Haw ahakku wala yegga no goro ay se.	3. I had eight or nine cows.
4. Haw yegga wala i woy no goro ay se.	4. I had nine or ten cows.
Z. 1. Bari iddu wala iye no iri ga du.	Z. 1. We'll have six or seven horses.
2. Bari iye wala ahakku no iri ga du.	2. We'll have seven or eight horses.
3. Bari ahakku wala yegga no iri ga du.	3. We'll have eight or nine horses.
4. Bari yegga wala i woy no iri ga du.	4. We'll have nine or ten horses.
AA. 1. Mannan ni goro nda haw ya'?	AA. 1. Did you have cows last year?
2. Mannan ni goro nda bari ya'?	2. Did you have horses last year?
3. Mannan ni goro nda yo ya'?	3. Did you have camels last year?

BB. 1. Mannan aran goro nda gorn'o ya'?	BB. 1. Did you have chickens last year?
2. Mannan aran goro nda hi'tyin ya'?	2. Did you have goats last year?
3. Mannan aran goro nda fedyi ya'?	3. Did you have sheep last year?
CC. 1. Mannan a goro nda haw ya'?	CC. 1. Did he have cows last year?
2. Mannan a goro nda bari ya'?	2. Did he have horses last year?
3. Mannan a goro nda yo ya'?	3. Did he have camels last year?
DD. 1. Mannan i goro nda gorn'o ya'?	DD. 1. Did they have chickens last year?
2. Mannan i goro nda hi'tyin ya'?	2. Did they have goats last year?
3. Mannan i goro nda fedyi ya'?	3. Did they have sheep last year?
EE. 1. Yesi ni ga du haw ya'?	EE. 1. Will you have cows next year?
2. Yesi ni ga du bari ya'?	2. Will you have horses next year?
3. Yesi ni ga du yo ya'?	3. Will you have camels next year?
FF. 1. Yesi aran ga du gorn'o ya'?	FF. 1. Will you have chickens next year?
2. Yesi aran ga du hi'tyin ya'?	2. Will you have goats next year?
3. Yesi aran ga du fedyi ya'?	3. Will you have sheep next year?
GG. 1. Yesi a ga du haw ya'?	GG. 1. Will he have cows next year?
2. Yesi a ga du bari ya'?	2. Will he have horses next year?
3. Yesi a ga du yo ya'?	3. Will he have camels next year?
HH. 1. Yesi i ga du gorn'o ya'?	HH. 1. Will they have chickens next year?
2. Yesi i ga du hi'tyin ya'?	2. Will they have goats next year?
3. Yesi i ga du fedyi ya'?	3. Will they have sheep next year?

II. 1. Ha'a, ay mana goro nda haw.	II. 1. No, I didn't have a cow.
2. Ha'a, ay mana goro nda bari.	2. No, I didn't have a horse.
3. Ha'a, ay mana goro nda yo.	3. No, I didn't have a camel.
JJ. 1. Ha'a, iri mana goro nda gorn'o ya'.	JJ. 1. No, we didn't have chickens.
2. Ha'a, iri mana goro nda hi'tyin ya'.	2. No, we didn't have goats.
3. Ha'a, iri mana goro nda fedyi ya'.	3. No, we didn't have sheep.
KK. 1. Ha'a, a mana goro nda haw ya'.	KK. 1. No, he didn't have cows.
2. Ha'a, a mana goro nda bari ya'.	2. No, he didn't have horses.
3. Ha'a, a mana goro nda yo ya'.	3. No, he didn't have camels.
LL. 1. Ha'a, i mana goro nda gorn'o ya'.	LL. 1. No, they didn't have chickens.
2. Ha'a, i mana goro nda hi'tyin ya'.	2. No, they didn't have goats.
3. Ha'a, i mana goro nda fedyi ya'.	3. No, they didn't have sheep.
MM. 1. Ha'a, ay si du haw.	MM. 1. No, I won't have a cow.
2. Ha'a, ay si du bari.	2. No, I won't have a horse.
3. Ha'a, ay si du yo.	3. No, I won't have a camel.
NN. 1. Ha'a, iri si du gorn'o ya'.	NN. 1. No, we won't have chickens.
2. Ha'a, iri si du hi'tyin ya'.	2. No, we won't have goats.
3. Ha'a, iri si du fedyi ya'.	3. No, we won't have sheep.

OO. 1. Ha'a, a si du haw ya'.	OO. 1. No, he won't have cows.
2. Ha'a, a si du bari ya'.	2. No, he won't have horses.
3. Ha'a, a si du yo ya'.	3. No, he won't have camels.
PP. 1. Ha'a, i si du gorn'o ya'.	PP. 1. No, they won't have chickens.
2. Ha'a, i si du hi'tyin ya'.	2. No, they won't have goats.
3. Ha'a, i si du fedyi ya'.	3. No, they won't have sheep.
QQ. 1. Amma ay goro nda haw.	QQ. 1. But I had a cow.
2. Amma ay goro nda bari.	2. But I had a horse.
3. Amma ay goro nda yo.	3. But I had a camel.
RR. 1. Amma iri goro nda gorn'o ya'.	RR. 1. But we had chickens.
2. Amma iri goro nda hi'tyin ya'.	2. But we had goats.
3. Amma iri goro nda fedyi ya'.	3. But we had sheep.
SS. 1. Amma a goro nda haw ya'.	SS. 1. But he had cows.
2. Amma a goro nda bari ya'.	2. But he had horses.
3. Amma a goro nda yo ya'.	3. But he had camels.
TT. 1. Amma i goro nda gorn'o ya'.	TT. 1. But they had chickens.
2. Amma i goro nda hi'tyin ya'.	2. But they had goats.
3. Amma i goro nda fedyi ya'.	3. But they had sheep.
UU. 1. Amma ay ga du haw.	UU. 1. But I'll have a cow.
2. Amma ay ga du bari.	2. But I'll have a horse.
3. Amma ay ga du yo.	3. But I'll have a camel.
VV. 1. Amma iri ga du gorn'o ya'.	VV. 1. But we'll have chickens.
2. Amma iri ga du hi'tyin ya'.	2. But we'll have goats.
3. Amma iri ga du fedyi ya'.	3. But we'll have sheep.

WW. 1. Amma a ga du haw ya'.	WW. 1. But he'll have cows.
2. Amma a ga du bari ya'.	2. But he'll have horses.
3. Amma a ga du yo ya'.	3. But he'll have camels.
XX. 1. Amma i ga du gorn'o ya'.	XX. 1. But they'll have chickens.
2. Amma i ga du hi'tyin ya'.	2. But they'll have goats.
3. Amma i ga du fedyi ya'.	3. But they'll have sheep.

Phonology Drills

ma	name (def./indef.)
A. 1. Ay ma Abdu.	A. 1. My name is Abdu.
mā	to hear, understand
2. Ay mā ha' ka' ni ne.	2. I heard what you said.
mā	to be enough
3. Tyiro mā.	3. There's enough salt.
mate	how, what
B. 1. Mate boro ma?	B. 1. What is this man's name?
māte	to feel
2. Ni go ga māte dama?	2. Do you feel well?
mo	eye (indef.)
C. 1. Ay mo ga doru.	C. 1. I hurt my eye.
mo	also, too
2. Ni mo ga bay.	2. You, too, know.
mō	rice (indef.)
3. Amina na mō hina.	3. Amina cooked some rice.

moru	far
D. 1. Tilaberi ga moru.	D. 1. Tilaberi is far.
mōru	to ferment
2. Bita mōru.	2. The porridge has fermented.
labu	to pinch
E. 1. Dabirdyo na ay labu.	E. 1. The door pinched me.
lābu	sand, earth (indef.)
2. Lābu furo hawro ra.	2. Sand has gotten into the food.
yesi	next year
F. 1. Yesi ay ga hayni duma.	F. 1. Next year I'll sow millet.
yēsi	to quench thirst
2. Ay bariyo yēsi.	2. My horse quenched his thirst.

UNIT 20

Dialogue 1

alwati	time (indef. sg.)
A: Alwati fo no?	A: What time is it?
susubay	early morning (indef.)
B: Susubay no.	B: It's early morning.

Dialogue 2

alasar	early evening (indef.)
to	to arrive
A: Alasar to?	A: Is it early evening (yet)?
alula	late afternoon (indef.)
B: Ha'a, alula no.	B: No, it's late afternoon.

Dialogue 3

almari	late evening (indef.)
tyin	night (indef.)
A: Almari no wala tyin?	A: Is it late evening or night?
alfazar	very early morning (indef.)
B: Alfazar no.	B: It's very early morning.

Dialogue 4

aduha	late morning (indef.)
bisa	to pass, be past
A: Aduha bisa?	A: Is it past late morning?
zari	early afternoon (indef.)
B: Oho, zari no.	B: Yes, it's early afternoon.

Dialogue 5

atinni	Monday (indef.)
A: Hu'kuna atinni mo?	A: Is today Monday?
atalata	Tuesday (indef.)
B: Ha'a. Hu'kuna atalata no.	B: No. Today is Tuesday.

Dialogue 6

alarba	Wednesday (indef.)
A: Bi alarba mo?	A: Was yesterday Wednesday?
alamisi	Thursday (indef.)
B: Ha'a. Bi alamisi no.	B: No. Yesterday was Thursday.

Dialogue 7

hamberi	Friday (indef.)
A: Suba hamberi mo?	A: Will tomorrow be Friday?
asipti	Saturday (indef.)
B: Ha'a. Suba asipti no.	B: No. Tomorrow will be Saturday.

Dialogue 8

alhadi	Sunday (indef.)
A: Hu'kuna asipti no wala alhadi?	A: Is today Saturday or Sunday?
B: Hu'kuna alhadi no.	B: Today is Sunday.

Dialogue 9

hari	rain, water (indef. sg.)
A: Hari ga ka hu'kuna?	A: Is it going to be rainy today?
tamma	to believe
B: Ay ga tamma.	B: I think so.
woyno	sun (indef.)
Woyno si no.	It isn't sunny.

Dialogue 10

bena	sky (def.)
hirri	to be cloudy
A: Bena ga hirri hu'kuna?	A: Is it going to be cloudy today?
B: Ay si tamma. Woyno go no.	B: I think not. It's sunny.

Dialogue 11

korni	heat (indef. sg.)
A: Korni ga te hu'kuna?	A: Is it going to be hot today?
dahir	sure, certain
B: Dahir no.	B: It certainly is.
buru	cloud (indef.)
Buru ya' si no.	It isn't cloudy.

Dialogue 12

yeni	coolness (indef. sg.)
A: Yeni ga te hu'kuna?	A: Is it going to be cool today?
hambara	perhaps, probably
B: Hambara. Buru ya' go no.	B: Perhaps. It's cloudy.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Alwati fo no?	A. 1. What time is it?
Alfasar no.	It's very early morning.
2. Alwati fo no?	2. What time is it?
Susubay no.	It's early morning.
3. Alwati fo no?	3. What time is it?
Aduha no.	It's late morning.
4. Alwati fo no?	4. What time is it?
Zari no.	It's early afternoon.
5. Alwati fo no?	5. What time is it?
Alula no.	It's late afternoon.
6. Alwati fo no?	6. What time is it?
Alasar no.	It's early evening.
7. Alwati fo no?	7. What time is it?
Almari no.	It's late evening.
8. Alwati fo no?	8. What time is it?
Tyin no.	It's night.
B. 1. Alfasar to?	B. 1. Is it very early morning (yet)?
2. Susubay to?	2. Is it early morning (yet)?
3. Aduha to?	3. Is it late morning (yet)?
4. Zari to?	4. Is it early afternoon (yet)?
5. Alula to?	5. Is it late afternoon (yet)?
6. Alasar to?	6. Is it early evening (yet)?
7. Almari to?	7. Is it late evening (yet)?
8. Tyin to?	8. Is it night (yet)?
C. 1. Alfasar bisa?	C. 1. Is it past very early morning?
2. Susubay bisa?	2. Is it past early morning?
3. Aduha bisa?	3. Is it past late morning?
4. Zari bisa?	4. Is it past early afternoon?

5. Alula bisa?	5. Is it past late afternoon?
6. Alasar bisa?	6. Is it past early evening?
7. Almari bisa?	7. Is it past late evening?
8. Tyin bisa?	8. Is it past night?
D. 1. Alfazar no wala susubay?	D. 1. Is it very early morning or early morning?
2. Susubay no wala aduha?	2. Is it early morning or late morning?
3. Aduha no wala zari?	3. Is it late morning or early afternoon?
4. Zari no wala alula?	4. Is it early afternoon or late afternoon?
5. Alula no wala alasar?	5. Is it late afternoon or early evening?
6. Alasar no wala almari?	6. Is it early evening or late evening?
7. Almari no wala tyin?	7. Is it late evening or night?
8. Tyin no wala alfazar?	8. Is it night or very early morning?
E. 1. Hu'kuna atinni no?	E. 1. Is today Monday?
2. Hu'kuna atalata no?	2. Is today Tuesday?
3. Hu'kuna alarba no?	3. Is today Wednesday?
4. Hu'kuna alamisi no?	4. Is today Thursday?
5. Hu'kuna hanberi no?	5. Is today Friday?
6. Hu'kuna asipti no?	6. Is today Saturday?
7. Hu'kuna alhadi no?	7. Is today Sunday?
F. 1. Bi atinni no?	F. 1. Was yesterday Monday?
2. Bi atalata no?	2. Was yesterday Tuesday?
3. Bi alarba no?	3. Was yesterday Wednesday?
4. Bi alamisi no?	4. Was yesterday Thursday?
5. Bi hanberi no?	5. Was yesterday Friday?

6. Bi asipti no?	6. Was yesterday Saturday?
7. Bi alhadi no?	7. Was yesterday Sunday?
G. 1. Suba atinni no?	G. 1. Will tomorrow be Monday?
2. Suba atalata no?	2. Will tomorrow be Tuesday?
3. Suba alarba no?	3. Will tomorrow be Wednesday?
4. Suba alamisi no?	4. Will tomorrow be Thursday?
5. Suba hanberi no?	5. Will tomorrow be Friday?
6. Suba asipti no?	6. Will tomorrow be Saturday?
7. Suba alhadi no?	7. Will tomorrow be Sunday?
H. 1. Hu'kuna atinni no.	H. 1. Today is Monday.
2. Hu'kuna atalata no.	2. Today is Tuesday.
3. Hu'kuna alarba no.	3. Today is Wednesday.
4. Hu'kuna alamisi no.	4. Today is Thursday.
5. Hu'kuna hanberi no.	5. Today is Friday.
6. Hu'kuna asipti no.	6. Today is Saturday.
7. Hu'kuna alhadi no.	7. Today is Sunday.
I. 1. Bi atinni no.	I. 1. Yesterday was Monday.
2. Bi atalata no.	2. Yesterday was Tuesday.
3. Bi alarba no.	3. Yesterday was Wednesday.
4. Bi alamisi no.	4. Yesterday was Thursday.
5. Bi hanberi no.	5. Yesterday was Friday.
6. Bi asipti no.	6. Yesterday was Saturday.
7. Bi alhadi no.	7. Yesterday was Sunday.
J. 1. Suba atinni no.	J. 1. Tomorrow will be Monday.
2. Suba atalata no.	2. Tomorrow will be Tuesday.
3. Suba alarba no.	3. Tomorrow will be Wednesday.
4. Suba alamisi no.	4. Tomorrow will be Thursday.
5. Suba hanberi no.	5. Tomorrow will be Friday.
6. Suba asipti no.	6. Tomorrow will be Saturday.
7. Suba alhadi no.	7. Tomorrow will be Sunday.

K. 1. Hu'kuna atinni no wala atalata?	K. 1. Is today Monday or Tuesday?
2. Hu'kuna atalata no wala alarba?	2. Is today Tuesday or Wednesday?
3. Hu'kuna alarba no wala alamisi?	3. Is today Wednesday or Thursday?
4. Hu'kuna alamisi no wala hanberi?	4. Is today Thursday or Friday?
5. Hu'kuna hanberi no wala asipti?	5. Is today Friday or Saturday?
6. Hu'kuna asipti no wala alhadi?	6. Is today Saturday or Sunday?
7. Hu'kuna alhadi no wala atinni?	7. Is today Sunday or Monday?
L. 1. Hari ga ka hu'kuna? Ay ga tamma.	L. 1. Is it going to be rainy today? I think so.
2. Hari ga ka hu'kuna? Ay si tamma.	2. Is it going to be rainy today? I think not.
3. Hari ga ka hu'kuna? Dahir no.	3. Is it going to be rainy today? It certainly is.
4. Hari ga ka hu'kuna? Hambara.	4. Is it going to be rainy today? Perhaps.
M. 1. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna? Ay ga tamma.	M. 1. Is it going to be cloudy today? I think so.
2. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna? Ay si tamma.	2. Is it going to be cloudy today? I think not.
3. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna? Dahir no.	3. Is it going to be cloudy today? It certainly is.
4. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna? Hambara.	4. Is it going to be cloudy today? Perhaps.

N. 1. Korni ga te hu'kuna?	N. 1. Is it going to be hot today?
Ay ga tamma.	I think so.
2. Korni ga te hu'kuna?	2. Is it going to be hot today?
Ay si tamma.	I think not.
3. Korni ga te hu'kuna?	3. Is it going to be hot today?
Dahir no.	It certainly is.
4. Korni ga te hu'kuna?	4. Is it going to be hot today?
Hambara.	Perhaps.
O. 1. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?	O. 1. Is it going to be cool today?
Ay ga tamma.	I think so.
2. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?	2. Is it going to be cool today?
Ay si tamma.	I think not.
3. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?	3. Is it going to be cool today?
Dahir no.	It certainly is.
4. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?	4. Is it going to be cool today?
Hambara.	Perhaps.
P. 1. Woyno go no.	P. 1. It's sunny.
2. Ay ga tamma. Woyno go no.	2. I think so. It's sunny.
3. Ay si tamma. Woyno go no.	3. I think not. It's sunny.
4. Dahir no. Woyno go no.	4. It certainly is. It's sunny.
5. Hambara. Woyno go no.	5. Perhaps. It's sunny.
Q. 1. Woyno si no.	Q. 1. It isn't sunny.
2. Ay ga tamma. Woyno si no.	2. I think so. It isn't sunny.
3. Ay si tamma. Woyno si no.	3. I think not. It isn't sunny.
4. Dahir no. Woyno si no.	4. It certainly is. It isn't sunny.
5. Hambara. Woyno si no.	5. Perhaps. It isn't sunny.
R. 1. Buru ya' go no.	R. 1. It's cloudy.
2. Ay ga tamma. Buru ya' go no.	2. I think so. It's cloudy.

3. Ay si tamma. Buru ya' go no.	3. I think not. It's cloudy.
4. Dahir no. Buru ya' go no.	4. It certainly is. It's cloudy.
5. Hambara. Buru ya' go no.	5. Perhaps. It's cloudy.
S. 1. Buru ya' si no.	S. 1. It isn't cloudy.
2. Ay ga tamma. Buru ya' si no.	2. I think so. It isn't cloudy.
3. Ay si tamma. Buru ya' si no.	3. I think not. It isn't cloudy.
4. Dahir no. Buru ya' si no.	4. It certainly is. It isn't cloudy.
5. Hambara. Buru ya' si no.	5. Perhaps. It isn't cloudy.

Phonology Drills

biti	to disturb, upset
A. 1. Woyna na ay bon'o biti.	A. 1. The sun has upset my head.
bitti	sediment deposit (of a liquid) (indef.)
2. Haro si bori, bitti no.	2. This water is dirty; there is sediment (in it).
fata	wing (indef.)
B. 1. Tyura fata tyeri.	B. 1. The bird's wing is broken.
fatta	to leave
2. Fatta fuwo ra.	2. Leave the house.
hima	to have to
C. 1. Ay hima ga koy fu.	C. 1. I must go home.
himma	to decide
2. Iri ma himma da' goyo ga.	2. Let's decide to do this work.

hano	day (def.)
D. 1. Hano ka' Abdu ka alamisi no.	D. 1. The day of Abdu's arrival was Thursday.
hanno	pretty, handsome (def./indef. sg.)
2. Abdu go'da bari hanno.	2. Abdu has a pretty horse.
folo	bag, napkin (def.)
E. 1. I fo no folo ra?	E. 1. What is there in this bag?
follo	to be mad, crazy
2. Bakari ha'so follo.	2. Bakari's dog is mad.
hiri	pearl (indef.)
F. 1. Bibata go'da hiri hanno.	F. 1. Bibata has a pretty pearl.
hirri	adjoining (def./indef. sg.)
2. Abdu nda Bakari farey ga hirri.	2. Abdu and Bakari's fields are adjoining.

UNIT 21

Dialogue 1

bumbo	oneself (def.)
hawro	porridge, food (def. sg.)
hina	to cook
A: Ni bumbo no na hawro hina?	A: Did you cook the porridge yourself?
B: Oho, ay bumbo no na a hina.	B: Yes, I cooked it myself.
wati	time (indef. sg.)
kulu	every, each, all
hawru	porridge, food (indef. sg.)
A: Ni ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?	A: Do you eat porridge all the time?
soro	time (indef. sg.)
zaro	day (def.)
B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no ay ga a n'wa zaro ra.	B: No, I eat it twice a day.

Dialogue 2

hamo	meat (def. sg.)
A: I'ga bumbo no na hamo hina?	A: Did she cook the meat herself?
B: Oho, i'ga bumbo no na hamo hina.	B: Yes, she cooked the meat herself.
ham	meat (indef. sg.)
A: A ga ham n'wa wati kulu?	A: Does she eat meat all the time?
B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no a ga ham n'wa zaro ra.	B: No, she eats meat twice a day.

Dialogue 3

bumbey	oneself (def. pl.)
mwa	rice (def. sg.)
A: Aran bumbey no na mwa hina?	A: Did you cook the rice yourselves?
B: Oho, iri bumbey no na a hina.	B: Yes, we cooked it ourselves.
mo	rice (indef. sg.)
A: Aran ga mo n'wa wati kulu?	A: Do you eat rice all the time?
B: Ha'a, sere hi'ka no iri ga a n'wa zaro ra.	B: No, we eat it twice a day.

Dialogue 4

dono	dono (a drink made of millet) (def. sg.)
dibi	to mix
A: I'gey bumbey no na dono dibi?	A: Did they mix the dono themselves?
B: Oho, i'gey bumbey no na dono dibi.	B: Yes, they mixed the dono themselves.
donu	donu (a drink made of millet) (indef. sg.)
ha'	to drink
A: I ga donu ha' wati kulu?	A: Do they drink donu all the time?
B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no i ga donu ha' zaro ra.	B: No, they drink donu twice a day.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni bumbo no na hawro hina?	A. 1. Did you cook the porridge yourself?
2. Ni bumbo no na hamo hina?	2. Did you cook the meat yourself?
3. Ni bumbo no na mwa hina?	3. Did you cook the rice yourself?
B. 1. Aran bumbey no na hawro hina?	B. 1. Did you cook the porridge yourselves?
2. Aran bumbey no na hamo hina?	2. Did you cook the meat yourselves?
3. Aran bumbey no na mwa hina?	3. Did you cook the rice yourselves?
C. 1. I'ga bumbo no na hawro hina?	C. 1. Did she cook the porridge herself?
2. I'ga bumbo no na hamo hina?	2. Did she cook the meat herself?
3. I'ga bumbo no na mwa hina?	3. Did she cook the rice herself?
D. 1. I'gey bumbey no na hawro hina?	D. 1. Did they cook the porridge themselves?
2. I'gey bumbey no na hamo hina?	2. Did they cook the meat themselves?
3. I'gey bumbey no na mwa hina?	3. Did they cook the rice themselves?
E. 1. Ni bumbo no na dono dibi?	E. 1. Did you mix the dono yourself?
2. Aran bumbey no na dono dibi?	2. Did you mix the dono yourselves?
3. I'ga bumbo no na dono dibi?	3. Did she mix the dono herself?
4. I'gey bumbey no na dono dibi?	4. Did they mix the dono themselves?
F. 1. Ay bumbo no na hawro hina.	F. 1. I cooked the porridge myself.
2. Ay bumbo no na hamo hina.	2. I cooked the meat myself.
3. Ay bumbo no na mwa hina.	3. I cooked the rice myself.
G. 1. Iri bumbey no na hawro hina.	G. 1. We cooked the porridge ourselves.
2. Iri bumbey no na hamo hina.	2. We cooked the meat ourselves.
3. Iri bumbey no na mwa hina.	3. We cooked the rice ourselves.
H. 1. I'ga bumbo no na hawro hina.	H. 1. She cooked the porridge herself.
2. I'ga bumbo no na hamo hina.	2. She cooked the meat herself.
3. I'ga bumbo no na mwa hina.	3. She cooked the rice herself.

I. 1. I'gey bumbey no na hawro hina.	I. 1. They cooked the porridge themselves.
2. I'gey bumbey no na hamo hina.	2. They cooked the meat themselves.
3. I'gey bumbey no na mwa hina.	3. They cooked the rice themselves.
J. 1. Ay bumbo no na dono dibi.	J. 1. I mixed the dono myself.
2. Iri bumbey no na dono dibi.	2. We mixed the dono ourselves.
3. I'ga bumbo no na dono dibi.	3. She mixed the dono herself.
4. I'gey bumbey no na dono dibi.	4. They mixed the dono themselves.
K. 1. Oho, ay bumbo no na a hina.	K. 1. Yes, I cooked it myself.
2. Oho, iri bumbey no na a hina.	2. Yes, we cooked it ourselves.
3. Oho, i'ga bumbo no na a hina.	3. Yes, she cooked it herself.
4. Oho, i'gey bumbey no na a hina.	4. Yes, they cooked it themselves.
L. 1. Oho, ay bumbo no na a dibi.	L. 1. Yes, I mixed it myself.
2. Oho, iri bumbey no na a dibi.	2. Yes, we mixed it ourselves.
3. Oho, i'ga bumbo no na a dibi.	3. Yes, she mixed it herself.
4. Oho, i'gey bumbey no na a dibi.	4. Yes, they mixed it themselves.
M. 1. Ni ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?	M. 1. Do you eat porridge all the time?
2. Ni ga ham n'wa wati kulu?	2. Do you eat meat all the time?
3. Ni ga mo n'wa wati kulu?	3. Do you eat rice all the time?
N. 1. Aran ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?	N. 1. Do you eat porridge all the time?
2. Aran ga ham n'wa wati kulu?	2. Do you eat meat all the time?
3. Aran ga mo n'wa wati kulu?	3. Do you eat rice all the time?
O. 1. A ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?	O. 1. Does he/she eat porridge all the time?
2. A ga ham n'wa wati kulu?	2. Does he/she eat meat all the time?
3. A ga mo n'wa wati kulu?	3. Does he/she eat rice all the time?
P. 1. I ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?	P. 1. Do they eat porridge all the time?
2. I ga ham n'wa wati kulu?	2. Do they eat meat all the time?
3. I ga mo n'wa wati kulu?	3. Do they eat rice all the time?

Q. 1.	Ni ga donu ha' wati kulu?	Do you drink donu all the time?
2.	Aran ga donu ha' wati kulu?	Do you drink donu all the time?
3.	A ga donu ha' wati kulu?	Does he/she drink donu all the time?
4.	I ga donu ha' wati kulu?	Do they drink donu all the time?
R. 1.	Soro hi'ka no ay ga hawru n'wa zaro ra.	I eat porridge twice a day.
2.	Soro hi'ka no ay ga ham n'wa zaro ra.	I eat meat twice a day.
3.	Soro hi'ka no ay ga mo n'wa zaro ra.	I eat rice twice a day.
S. 1.	Soro hi'ka no iri ga hawru n'wa zaro ra.	We eat porridge twice a day.
2.	Soro hi'ka no iri ga ham n'wa zaro ra.	We eat meat twice a day.
3.	Soro hi'ka no iri ga mo n'wa zaro ra.	We eat rice twice a day.
T. 1.	Soro hi'ka no a ga hawru n'wa zaro ra.	He/She eats porridge twice a day.
2.	Soro hi'ka no a ga ham n'wa zaro ra.	He/She eats meat twice a day.
3.	Soro hi'ka no a ga mo n'wa zaro ra.	He/She eats rice twice a day.
U. 1.	Soro hi'ka no i ga hawru n'wa zaro ra.	They eat porridge twice a day.
2.	Soro hi'ka no i ga ham n'wa zaro ra.	They eat meat twice a day.
3.	Soro hi'ka no i ga mo n'wa zaro ra.	They eat rice twice a day.

V. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga donu ha' zaro ra.	V. 1. I drink donu twice a day.
2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga donu ha' zaro ra.	2. We drink donu twice a day.
3. Soro hi'ka no a ga donu ha' zaro ra.	3. He/She drinks donu twice a day.
4. Soro hi'ka no i ga donu ha' zaro ra.	4. They drink donu twice a day.
W. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga a n'wa zaro ra.	W. 1. I eat it twice a day.
2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga a n'wa zaro ra.	2. We eat it twice a day.
3. Soro hi'ka no a ga a n'wa zaro ra.	3. He/She eats it twice a day.
4. Soro hi'ka no i ga a n'wa zaro ra.	4. They eat it twice a day.
X. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga a ha' zaro ra.	X. 1. I drink it twice a day.
2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga a ha' zaro ra.	2. We drink it twice a day.
3. Soro hi'ka no a ga a ha' zaro ra.	3. He/She drinks it twice a day.
4. Soro hi'ka no i ga a ha' zaro ra.	4. They drink it twice a day.

UNIT 22

Dialogue 1

alborey	men (def.)
A: I fo no alborey go ga te?	A: What are the men doing?
tafe	tafe (a loose garment) (indef.)
ta	to sew
B: I go ga tafe ta no.	B: They're sewing a tafe.
i fo se	why
tyere	each other
banda	with
goy	to work
A: I fo se no i go ga goy tyere banda?	A: Why are they working together?
hima	to have to, must
ga	(signals a compound predicate)
B: I ga hima ga tyere ga.[1]	B: They must help each other.

Dialogue 2

woyborey	women (def.)
A: I fo no woyborey go ga te?	A: What are the women doing?
gasey	calabashes (def.)
nyun	to wash
B: I go ga gasey nyun.	B: They're washing calabashes.
A: I fo se no i go ga goy tyere banda?	A: Why are they working together?
dona	to be in the habit of
B: I ga dona ga tyere ga.[1]	B: They're in the habit of helping each other.

Dialogue 3

goro	to sit
A: I fo se no alborey go ga goro tyere banda?	A: Why are the men sitting together?
fakarey	to chat
B: I go ga fakarey no.	B: They're chatting.
A: I fo no i go ga ta?	A: What are they sewing?
kwayi	kwayi (a garment) (indef.)
B: I go ga kwayi ta no.	B: They're sewing a kwayi.

Dialogue 4

kay	to stand
A: I fo se no woyborey go ga kay tyere banda?	A: Why are the women standing together?
mima'da	to gossip
B: I go ga mima'da no.	B: They're gossiping.

Dialogue 5

A: I fo no i go ga nyun?	A: What are they washing?
tasey	pans (def.)
B: I go ga tasey nyun.	B: They're washing pans.

Dialogue 6

A: I fo no alborey go ga ta?	A: What are the men sewing?
mudun	trousers (indef. sg.)
B: I go ga mudun ta no.	B: They're sewing trousers.

A: I fo no woyborey go ga nyun?	A: What are the women washing?
kusey	pots (def.)
B: I go ga kusey nyun.	B: They're washing pots.
A: I fo se no i go ga goy tyere banda?	A: Why are they working together?
B: I ga foy ga tyere ga.[1]	B: They spend the day helping each other.

Note on the Dialogues

1. In these expressions, the first *ga* signals the habitual Present of both *foy* 'to spend the day' and *ga* 'to help,' the last word of the sentence. The second *ga* carries the meaning of "and" in a comparable English structure.

Structural Drills

A. 1. I fo no *alborey* go ga te?	A. 1. What are the men doing?
2. I fo no *woyborey* go ga te?	2. What are the women doing?
3. I fo no *zankey* go ga te?	3. What are the children doing?
B. 1. I fo no alborey go ga *te*?	B. 1. What are the men doing?
2. I fo no alborey go ga *ta*?	2. What are the men sewing?
3. I fo no alborey go ga *nyun*?	3. What are the men washing?
C. 1. I fo no woyborey go ga *te*?	C. 1. What are the women doing?
2. I fo no woyborey go ga *ta*?	2. What are the women sewing?
3. I fo no woyborey go ga *nyun*?	3. What are the women washing?
D. 1. I fo no i go ga *te*?	D. 1. What are they doing?
2. I fo no i go ga *ta*?	2. What are they sewing?
3. I fo no i go ga *nyun*?	3. What are they washing?

E. 1. I go ga tafe ta no.	E. 1. They're sewing a tafe.
2. I go ga kwayi ta no.	2. They're sewing a kwayi.
3. I go ga mundun ta no.	3. They're sewing a mundun.
F. 1. I go ga gasey nyun.	F. 1. They're washing calabashes.
2. I go ga tasey nyun.	2. They're washing pans.
3. I go ga kusey nyun.	3. They're washing pots.
G. 1. I fo no alborey go ga te? I go ga tafe ta no.	G. 1. What are the men doing? They're sewing a tafe.
2. I fo no alborey go ga te? I go ga kwayi ta no.	2. What are the men doing? They're sewing a kwayi.
3. I fo no alborey go ga te? I go ga mundun ta no.	3. What are the men doing? They're sewing a mundun.
H. 1. I fo no woyborey go ga te? I go ga gasey nyun.	H. 1. What are the women doing? They're washing calabashes.
2. I fo no woyborey go ga te? I go ga tasey nyun.	2. What are the women doing? They're washing pans.
3. I fo no woyborey go ga te? I go ga kusey nyun.	3. What are the women doing? They're washing pots.
I. 1. I fo se no alborey go ga gore tyere banda?	I. 1. Why are the men sitting together?
2. I fo se no alborey go ga kay tyere banda?	2. Why are the men standing together?
3. I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda?	3. Why are the men working together?
J. 1. I fo se no woyborey go ga gore tyere banda?	J. 1. Why are the women sitting together?
2. I fo se no woyborey go ga kay tyere banda?	2. Why are the women standing together?
3. I fo se no woyborey go ga goy tyere banda?	3. Why are the women working together?

K. 1. I fo se no i go ga goro tyere banda?	K. 1. Why are they sitting together?
2. I fo se no i go ga kay tyere banda?	2. Why are they standing together?
3. I fo se no i go ga goy tyere banda?	3. Why are they working together?
L. 1. I fo se no alborey go ga goro tyere banda?	L. 1. Why are the men sitting together?
I go ga fakarey no.	They're chatting.
2. I fo se no woyborey go ga goro tyere banda?	2. Why are the women sitting together?
I go ga fakarey no.	They're chatting.
3. I fo se no i go ga goro tyere banda?	3. Why are they sitting together?
I go ga fakarey no.	They're chatting.
4. I fo se no alborey go ga kay tyere banda?	4. Why are the men standing together?
I go ga fakarey no.	They're chatting.
5. I fo se no woyborey go ga kay tyere banda?	5. Why are the women standing together?
I go ga fakarey no.	They're chatting.
6. I fo se no i go ga kay tyere banda?	6. Why are they standing together?
I go ga fakarey no.	They're chatting.
M. 1. I fo se no woyborey go ga goro tyere banda?	M. 1. Why are the women sitting together?
I go ga mima'da no.	They're gossiping.
2. I fo se no i go ga goro tyere banda?	2. Why are they sitting together?
I go ga mima'da no.	They're gossiping.

3. I fo se no woyborey go ga kay tyere banda? I go ga mima'da no.	3. Why are the women standing together? They're gossiping.
4. I fo se no i go ga kay tyere banda? I go ga mima'da no.	4. Why are they standing together? They're gossiping.
N. 1. I ga hima ga tyere ga.	N. 1. They must help each other.
2. I ga dona ga tyere ga.	2. They're in the habit of helping each other.
3. I ga fey ga tyere ga.	3. They spend the day helping each other.
O. 1. Alborey ga hima ga tyere ga.	O. 1. The men must help each other.
2. Alborey ga dona ga tyere ga.	2. The men are in the habit of helping each other.
3. Alborey ga fey ga tyere ga.	3. The men spend the day helping each other.
P. 1. Woyborey ga hima ga tyere ga.	P. 1. The women must help each other.
2. Woyborey ga dona ga tyere ga.	2. The women are in the habit of helping each other.
3. Woyborey ga foy ga tyere ga.	3. The women spend the day helping each other.
Q. 1. I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda? I ga hima ga tyere ga.	Q. 1. Why are the men working together? They must help each other.
2. I fo se no alborey go ga gey tyere banda? I ga dona ga tyere ga.	2. Why are the men working together? They're in the habit of helping each other.

3. I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda? I ga foy ga tyere ga.	3. Why are the men working together? They spend the day helping each other.
R. 1. I fo se no woyborey go ga goy tyere banda? I ga hima ga tyere ga.	R. 1. Why are the women working together? They must help each other.
2. I fo se no woyborey go ga goy tyere banda? I ga dona ga tyere ga.	2. Why are the women working together? They're in the habit of helping each other.
3. I fo se no woyborey go ga goy tyere banda? I ga foy ga tyere ga.	3. Why are the women working together? They spend the day helping each other.

UNIT 23

Dialogue 1

buru	bread (indef. sg.)
go no	there is/there are
A: Buru go no?	A: Is there (any) bread?
B: A go no.	B: There is (some).
A: Mardye mardye[1] no?	A: How much is each (loaf)?
dala	dala, a five franc coin (indef.)
B: Dala hi'ka hi'ka[1] no.	B: It's two dalas (ten francs) each.
no	to give
A: Ay no[2] buru hi'ka.	A: Give me two loaves.

Dialogue 2

gu'guri	egg (indef.)
A: Ni go'da gu'guri?[3]	A: Do you have eggs?
B: Ay go'da gu'guri.	B: I have eggs.
A: Mardye mardye no?	A: How much are they?
B: I hi'za dala hi'ka.	B: They're three for two dalas (ten francs).
ba	to want, need
tyi'di	plus
A: Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di hi'ka.[4]	A: I want twelve.

B: Dala ahakku no.	B: It's eight dalas (forty francs).
A: A bori.	A: Good.
noro	money (def. sg.)
Noro ne.	Here's the money.

Dialogue 3

dyineyey	things (def.)
koy	owner (indef.)
A: Ni ga ti dyineyey koy?	A: Are you the owner of the things?
koyo	owner (def.)
i	them
B: Oho, ay ga ti i koyo.	B: Yes, I'm the owner (of them).
fulo	fulo (a hat) (def.)
A: Mardye no fulo?	A: How much is this fulo?
woro'ka	twenty
B: Dala woro'ka tyi'di hi'ka[4] no.	B: It's twenty-two dalas.
tyada	expensive (def./indef. sg.)
A: A tyada.	A: It's expensive.
dey	to buy
si	without
Ay ga a dey woro'ka i hi'ka si.[4]	I'll buy it for eighteen.
B: A dey woro'ka.	B: Buy it for twenty.
woro'za	thirty
A: Ay ga i hi'ka dey woro'za tyi'di gu.[4]	A: I'll buy two for thirty-five.
woytatyi	forty
B: I dey woytatyi.	B: Buy them for forty.

A: Ha'a, ay ga i dey woro'za tyi'di gu.	A: No, I'll buy them for thirty-five.
to	O. K., agreed
bana	to pay
B: To, bana.	B: O. K., pay (me)

Dialogue 4

Birni	Birni (a village)
A: Mardye no ne ga koy Birni?	A: How much from here to Birni?
zangu	hundred
B: Zangu nda woro'ka tyi'di gu[4] no.	B: It's one hundred twenty-five.
wohakku	eighty
A: Ay ga bana wohakku.	A: I'll pay eighty.
B: Bana zangu nda i woy.[4]	B: Pay a hundred ten.
A: Ay ga bana zangu i woy si.[4]	A: I'll pay ninety.
B: Bana zangu.	B: Pay a hundred.
A: To. I'ga ne.	A: O. K. Here it is.
furo	to enter
B: Furo.[5]	B: Enter.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. The repetition of mardye and hi'ka in these expressions carries the sense of "each."

2. An Imperative form, identical with the Infinitive.

3. In this expression the singular form is used, although the sense is plural in English. The plural could also be used in Djerma.

4. The Djerma numbering system follows precisely the pattern indicated by the examples in this lesson. The numbers eleven through seventeen are formed as follows: "ten plus ___" (*i woy* + *tyi'di* + word for units digit).

eleven	*i woy tyi'di fo*
twelve	*i woy tyi'di hi'ka*
thirteen	*i woy tyi'di hi'za*
fourteen	*i woy tyi'di tatyi*
fifteen	*i woy tyi'di gu*
sixteen	*i woy tyi'di iddu*
seventeen	*i woy tyi'di iye*

Eighteen and nineteen are formed: "twenty minus ___" (*woro'ka* + *i hi'ka*/*a fo* + *si*).

eighteen	*woro'ka i hi'ka si*
nineteen	*woro'ka a fo si*

Multiples of ten, through eighty, are adapted and contracted forms of: "___ tens" (synthesis of *woy* + word for units digit).

twenty	*woro'ka*
thirty	*woro'za*
forty	*woytatyi*
fifty	*woygu*
sixty	*woydu*
seventy	*woyye*
eighty	*wohakku*

Ninety is formed: "a hundred minus ten" (*zangu* + *i woy* + *si*) or "nine tens."

ninety	*zangu i woy si* or *woyga*

Numbers between multiples of ten, through ___ seven, are formed: "multiple of ten plus ___" (word for multiple of ten + tyi'di + word for units digit).

twenty-one	woro'ka tyi'di fo
thirty-two	woro'za tyi'di hi'ka
forty-three	woytatyi tyi'di hi'za
fifty-four	woygu tyi'di tatyi
sixty-five	woydu tyi'di gu
seventy-six	woyye tyi'di iddu
eighty-seven	wohakku tyi'di iye

Multiples of ten plus eight and nine are formed: "next higher multiple of ten minus ___" (word for next high multiple of ten + i hi'ka/a fo + si).

twenty-eight	woro'za i hi'ka si
thirty-nine	woytatyi a fo si
seventy-eight	wohakku i hi'ka si
ninety-nine	zangu a fo si

Multiples of a hundred, through nine hundred, are formed: "___ hundred" (zangu + word for units digit).

two hundred	zangu hi'ka
three hundred	zangu hi'za
four hundred	zangu tatyi
nine hundred	zangu yegga

Numbers between multiples of a hundred are formed: "___ hundred and ___" (zangu + word for hundreds digit + nda + remaining number(s)).

one hundred one	zangu nda fo
two hundred ten	zangu hi'ka nda i woy
three hundred twenty-one	zangu hi'za nda woro'ka tyi'di fo
four hundred thirty-eight	zangu tatyi nda woytatyi i hi'ka si

Multiples of a thousand are formed: "___ thousand" (za'bar + word for units digit).

one thousand	za'bar fo
two thousand	za'bar hi'ka
three thousand	za'bar hi'za

5. This expression may also be used to invite someone into one's home or office.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Buru go no?	A. 1. Is there (any) bread?
2. Gu'guri go no?	2. Are there (any) eggs?
3. Ham go no?	3. Is there (any) meat?
4. Mo go no?	4. Is there (any) rice?

B. 1. Buru go no?	B. 1. Is there (any) bread?
A go no.	There is (some).
2. Gu'guri go no?	2. Are there (any) eggs?
A go no.	There are (some).
3. Ham go no?	3. Is there (any) meat?
A go no.	There is (some).
4. Mo go no?	4. Is there (any) rice?
A go no.	There is (some).

C. 1. Ni go'da buru?	C. 1. Do you have bread?
2. Ni go'da gu'guri?	2. Do you have eggs?
3. Ni go'da ham?	3. Do you have meat?
4. Ni go'da mo?	4. Do you have rice?

D. 1. Ni go'da buru?	D. 1. Do you have bread?
Ay go'da buru.	I have bread.
2. Ni go'da gu'guri?	2. Do you have eggs?
Ay go'da gu'guri.	I have eggs.

3. Ni go'da ham?	3. Do you have meat?
Ay go'da ham.	I have meat.
4. Ni go'da mo?	4. Do you have rice?
Ay go'da mo.	I have rice.
E. 1. Dala fo no.	E. 1. It's one dala.
2. Dala hi'ka no.	2. It's two dalas.
3. Dala hi'za no.	3. It's three dalas.
4. Dala tatyi no.	4. It's four dalas.
5. Dala gu no.	5. It's five dalas.
6. Dala iddu no.	6. It's six dalas.
7. Dala iye no.	7. It's seven dalas.
8. Dala ahakku no.	8. It's eight dalas.
9. Dala yegga no.	9. It's nine dalas.
10. Dala woy no.	10. It's ten dalas.
F. 1. Dala fo fo no.	F. 1. It's one dala each.
2. Dala hi'ka hi'ka no.	2. It's two dalas each.
3. Dala hi'za hi'za no.	3. It's three dalas each.
4. Dala tatyi tatyi no.	4. It's four dalas each.
5. Dala gu gu no.	5. It's five dalas each.
6. Dala iddu iddu no.	6. It's six dalas each.
7. Dala iye iye no.	7. It's seven dalas each.
8. Dala ahakku ahakku no.	8. It's eight dalas each.
9. Dala yegga yegga no.	9. It's nine dalas each.
10. Dala woy woy no.	10. It's ten dalas each.
G. 1. Mardye mardye no?	G. 1. How much is each?
Dala fo fo no.	It's one dala each.
2. Mardye mardye no?	2. How much is each?
Dala hi'ka hi'ka no.	It's two dalas each.
3. Mardye mardye no?	3. How much is each?
Dala hi'za hi'za no.	It's three dalas each.

4. Mardye mardye no?	4. How much is each?
Dala tatyi tatyi no.	It's four dalas each.
5. Mardye mardye no?	5. How much is each?
Dala gu gu no.	It's five dalas each.
H. 1. Mardye mardye no?	H. 1. How much are they?
I hi'ka dala fo.	They're two for one dala.
2. Mardye mardye no?	2. How much are they?
I hi'ka dala hi'za.	They're two for three dalas.
3. Mardye mardye no?	3. How much are they?
I hi'ka dala tatyi.	They're two for four dalas.
4. Mardye mardye no?	4. How much are they?
I hi'ka dala gu.	They're two for five dalas.
I. 1. I hi'za dala iddu.	I. 1. They're three for six dalas.
2. I hi'za dala iye.	2. They're three for seven dalas.
3. I hi'za dala ahakku.	3. They're three for eight dalas.
4. I hi'za dala yegga.	4. They're three for nine dalas.
5. I hi'za dala woy.	5. They're three for ten dalas.
J. 1. Ay no buru fo.	J. 1. Give me one loaf.
2. Ay no buru hi'ka.	2. Give me two loaves.
3. Ay no buru hi'za.	3. Give me three loaves.
4. Ay no buru tatyi.	4. Give me four loaves.
5. Ay no buru gu.	5. Give me five loaves.
K. 1. Ay no buru iddu.	K. 1. Give me six loaves.
2. Ay no buru iye.	2. Give me seven loaves.
3. Ay no buru ahakku.	3. Give me eight loaves.
4. Ay no buru yegga.	4. Give me nine loaves.
5. Ay no buru woy.	5. Give me ten loaves.

L. 1. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di fo.	L. 1. I want eleven.
2. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di hi'ka.	2. I want twelve.
3. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di hi'za.	3. I want thirteen.
4. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di tatyi.	4. I want fourteen.
5. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di gu.	5. I want fifteen.
M. 1. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di iddu.	M. 1. I want sixteen.
2. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di iye.	2. I want seventeen.
3. Ay ga ba woro'ka i hi'ka si.	3. I want eighteen.
4. Ay ga ba woro'ka a fo si.	4. I want nineteen.
5. Ay ga ba woro'ka.	5. I want twenty.
N. 1. Dala woy tyi'di fo no. A bori. Noro ne.	N. 1. It's eleven dalas. Good. Here's the money.
2. Dala woy tyi'di hi'ka no. A bori. Noro ne.	2. It's twelve dalas. Good. Here's the money.
3. Dala woy tyi'di hi'za no. A bori. Noro ne.	3. It's thirteen dalas. Good. Here's the money.
4. Dala woro'ka i hi'ka si no. A bori. Noro ne.	4. It's eighteen dalas. Good. Here's the money.
5. Dala woro'ka a fo si no. A bori. Noro ne.	5. It's nineteen dalas. Good. Here's the money.

UNIT 24

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni ga ti dyineyey koy?	A. 1. Are you the owner of the things?
2. Ni ga ti farey koy?	2. Are you the owner of the fields?
3. Ni ga ti fuwey koy?	3. Are you the owner of the houses?
4. Ni ga ti gasey koy?	4. Are you the owner of the calabashes?
5. Ni ga ti tasey koy?	5. Are you the owner of the pans?
6. Ni ga ti kusey koy?	6. Are you the owner of the pots?
B. 1. Ni ga ti fulo koy?	B. 1. Are you the owner of the fulo?
2. Ni ga ti fuwo koy?	2. Are you the owner of the house?
3. Ni ga ti faro koy?	3. Are you the owner of the field?
4. Ni ga ti hamo koy?	4. Are you the owner of the meat?
C. 1. Mardye no fulo? Dala woro'ka no.	C. 1. How much is this fulo? It's twenty dalas.
2. Mardye no fulo? Dala woro'ka tyi'di fo no.	2. How much is this fulo? It's twenty-one dalas.
3. Mardye no fulo? Dala woro'ka a fo si no.	3. How much is this fulo? It's nineteen dalas.
4. Mardye no fulo? Dala woro'ka tyi'di hi'ka no.	4. How much is this fulo? It's twenty-two dalas.
5. Mardye no fulo? Dala woro'ka i hi'ka si no.	5. How much is this fulo? It's eighteen dalas.
D. 1. Dala woro'za i hi'ka si no. A tyada.	D. 1. It's twenty-eight dalas. It's expensive.
2. Dala woytatyi a fo si no. A tyada.	2. It's thirty-nine dalas. It's expensive.
3. Dala woygu i hi'ka si no. A tyada.	3. It's forty-eight dalas. It's expensive.

4. Dala woydu a fo si no. A tyada.	4. It's fifty-nine dalas. It's expensive.
5. Dala woyga i hi'ka si no. A tyada.	5. It's eighty-eight dalas. It's expensive.
6. Dala zangu a fo si no. A tyada.	6. It's ninety-nine dalas. It's expensive.
E. 1. A dey dala fo.	E. 1. Buy it for one.
2. A dey dala hi'ka.	2. Buy it for two.
3. A dey dala hi'za.	3. Buy it for three.
4. A dey dala tatyi.	4. Buy it for four.
5. A dey dala gu.	5. Buy it for five.
6. A dey dala iddu.	6. Buy it for six.
7. A dey dala iye.	7. Buy it for seven.
8. A dey dala ahakku.	8. Buy it for eight.
9. A dey dala yegga.	9. Buy it for nine.
10. A dey dala woy.	10. Buy it for ten.
F. 1. I dey dala woy.	F. 1. Buy them for ten.
2. I dey dala woro'ka.	2. Buy them for twenty.
3. I dey dala woro'za.	3. Buy them for thirty.
4. I dey dala woytatyi.	4. Buy them for forty.
5. I dey dala woygu.	5. Buy them for fifty.
6. I dey dala woydu.	6. Buy them for sixty.
7. I dey dala woyye.	7. Buy them for seventy.
8. I dey dala wohakku.	8. Buy them for eighty.
9. I dey dala woyga.	9. Buy them for ninety.
10. I dey dala zangu.	10. Buy them for a hundred.
G. 1. Bana woyye tyi'di fo.	G. 1. Pay seventy-one.
2. Bana woyye tyi'di hi'ka.	2. Pay seventy-two.
3. Bana woyye tyi'di hi'za.	3. Pay seventy-three.
4. Bana woyye tyi'di tatyi.	4. Pay seventy-four.
5. Bana woyye tyi'di gu.	5. Pay seventy-five.

6. Bana woyye tyi'di iddu.	6. Pay seventy-six.
7. Bana woyye tyi'di iye.	7. Pay seventy-seven.
8. Bana wohakku i hi'ka si.	8. Pay seventy-eight.
9. Bana wohakku a fo si.	9. Pay seventy-nine.
H. 1. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di fo.	H. 1. I'll buy them for ninety-one.
2. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di hi'ka.	2. I'll buy them for ninety-two.
3. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di hi'za.	3. I'll buy them for ninety-three.
4. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di tatyi.	4. I'll buy them for ninety-four.
5. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di gu.	5. I'll buy them for ninety-five.
6. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di iddu.	6. I'll buy them for ninety-six.
7. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di iye.	7. I'll buy them for ninety-seven.
8. Ay ga i dey zangu i hi'ka si.	8. I'll buy them for ninety-eight.
9. Ay ga i dey zangu a fo si.	9. I'll buy them for ninety-nine.
I. 1. Ay ga bana woro'ka i hi'ka si.	I. 1. I'll pay eighteen.
2. Ay ga bana woro'za i hi'ka si.	2. I'll pay twenty-eight.
3. Ay ga bana woytatyi i hi'ka si.	3. I'll pay thirty-eight.
4. Ay ga bana woygu i hi'ka si.	4. I'll pay forty-eight.
5. Ay ga bana woydu i hi'ka si.	5. I'll pay fifty-eight.
6. Ay ga bana woyye i hi'ka si.	6. I'll pay sixty-eight.
7. Ay ga bana wohakku i hi'ka si.	7. I'll pay seventy-eight.
8. Ay ga bana woyga i hi'ka si.	8. I'll pay eighty-eight.
9. Ay ga bana zangu i hi'ka si.	9. I'll pay ninety-eight.
J. 1. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woro'ka a fo si.	J. 1. I'll buy two for nineteen.
2. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woro'za a fo si.	2. I'll buy two for twenty-nine.
3. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woytatyi a fo si.	3. I'll buy two for thirty-nine.
4. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woygu a fo si.	4. I'll buy two for forty-nine.
5. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woydu a fo si.	5. I'll buy two for fifty-nine.
6. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woyye a fo si.	6. I'll buy two for sixty-nine.

7. Ay ga i hi'ka dey wohakku a fo si.	7. I'll buy two for seventy-nine.
8. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woyga a fo si.	8. I'll buy two for eighty-nine.
9. Ay ga i hi'ka dey zangu a fo si.	9. I'll buy two for ninety-nine.
K. 1. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu. To, bana.	K. 1. I'll buy three for a hundred. O. K., pay (me).
2. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu hi'ka. To, bana.	2. I'll buy three for two hundred. O. K., pay (me).
3. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu hi'za. To, bana.	3. I'll buy three for three hundred. O. K., pay (me).
4. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu tatyi. To, bana.	4. I'll buy three for four hundred. O. K., pay (me).
5. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu gu. To, bana.	5. I'll buy three for five hundred. O. K., pay (me).
L. 1. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu iddu.	L. 1. I'll buy three for six hundred.
2. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu iye.	2. I'll buy three for seven hundred.
3. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu ahakku.	3. I'll buy three for eight hundred.
4. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu yegga.	4. I'll buy three for nine hundred.
5. Ay ga i hi'za dey za'bar fo.	5. I'll buy three for a thousand.
M. 1. Bana zangu nda i hi'ka. To. I'ga ne.	M. 1. Pay a hundred two. O. K. Here it is.
2. Bana zangu hi'ka nda i woy tyi'di hi'za. To. I'ga ne.	2. Pay two hundred thirteen. O. K. Here it is.
3. Bana zangu hi'za nda woro'ka tyi'di tatyi. To. I'ga ne.	3. Pay three hundred twenty-four. O. K. Here it is.

4. Bana zangu tatyi nda woro'za tyi'di gu.	4. Pay four hundred thirty-five.
To. I'ga ne.	O. K. Here it is.
5. Bana zangu gu nda woytatyi tyi'di iddu.	5. Pay five hundred forty-six.
To. I'ga ne.	O. K. Here it is.
N. 1. Bana zangu iddu nda woygu tyi'di iye.	N. 1. Pay six hundred fifty-seven.
2. Bana zangu iye nda woyye i hi'ka si.	2. Pay seven hundred sixty-eight.
3. Bana zangu ahakku nda wohakku a fo si.	3. Pay eight hundred seventy-nine.
4. Bana za'bar fo a fo si.	4. Pay nine hundred ninety-nine.
O. 1. Mardye no ne ga koy Birni?	O. 1. How much from here to Birni?
Zangu nda woro'ka tyi'di gu no.	2. It's one hundred twenty-five.
2. Mardye no ne ga koy Niamey?	2. How much from here to Niamey?
Zangu hi'ka nda woygu no.	It's two hundred fifty.
3. Mardye no ne ga koy Doso?	3. How much from here to Doso?
Zangu hi'za nda woyye tyi'di gu no.	It's three hundred seventy-five.
4. Mardye no ne ga koy Filindye?	4. How much from here to Filindye?
Zangu gu no.	It's five hundred.

UNIT 25

Dialogue 1

A: Bakari dyiri mardye?	A: How old is Bakari?
B: A dyiri woro'ka i hi'ka si.	B: He's eighteen years old.
zen	to age
A: A zen Abdu?	A: Is he older than Abdu?
zanka	young (def./indef.)
nda	than
B: Ha'a, a ga zanka nda Abdu.	B: No, he's younger than Abdu.

Dialogue 2

A: Maman ga zanka nda Fatu?	A: Is Maman younger than Fatu?
B: Ha'a, a zen Fatu.	B: No, he's older than Fatu.
A: Ni zen ey?	A: Are you older than they?
B: Ha'a, ay ga zanka nda ey.	B: No, I'm younger than they.

Dialogue 3

A: Abdu nda Yakuba dyiri mardye?	A: How old are Abdu and Yakuba?
B: I dyiri woro'za.	B: They're thirty years old.

Dialogue 4

A: Ni dyiri mardye?	A: How old are you?
B: Ay dyiri woy.	B: I'm ten years old.

A: Zanka mardye no aran kwara?	A: How many children are in your family?
B: Zanka hi'ka no iri kwara.	B: There are two children in our family.
bero	older brother/sister (def.)
A: Ni ga ti bero?	A: Are you the older brother?
kayno	younger brother/sister (def.)
B: Ha'a, ay ga ti kayno.	B: No, I'm the younger brother.

Dialogue 5

A: Zanka mardye no aran kwara?	A: How many children are in your family?
B: Zanka iddu no iri kwara.	B: There are six children in our family.
A: Ni ga ti i kulu kayno?	A: Are you the youngest sister?
B: Ha'a, ay ga ti i kulu bero.	B: No, I'm the oldest sister.

Dialogue 6

da'ga	as, like
A: Yakuba zen da'ga Abdu?	A: Is Yakuba as old as Abdu?
B: Ha'a, a mana zen da'ga Abdu.	B: No, he isn't as old as Abdu.
A: I'ga ga ti kayno?	A: Is he the younger brother?
B: Ha'a.	B: No.
A: A ga zanka da'ga Maman?	A: Is he as young as Maman?
B: Oho, a ga zanka da'ga Maman.	B: Yes, he's as young as Maman.

Dialogue 7

A: Ni ga zanka da'ga Bakari?	A: Are you as young as Bakari?
B: Ha'a, ay si zanka da'ga i'ga.	B: No, I'm not as young as he.
A: Ni zen da'ga Amina nda Fatu?	A: Are you as old as Amina and Fatu?
B: Oho, ay zen da'ga i'gey.	B: Yes, I'm as old as they.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Bakari dyiri mardye?	A. 1. How old is Bakari?
2. Amina dyiri mardye?	2. How old is Amina?
3. Maman dyiri mardye?	3. How old is Maman?
4. Fatu dyiri mardye?	4. How old is Fatu?
B. 1. Ni dyiri mardye?	B. 1. How old are you?
2. Aran dyiri mardye?	2. How old are you?
3. A dyiri mardye?	3. How old is he/she?
4. I dyiri mardye?	4. How old are they?
C. 1. Bakari dyiri wore'ka.	C. 1. Bakari is twenty years old.
2. Bakari dyiri woro'za.	2. Bakari is thirty years old.
3. Bakari dyiri woytatyi.	3. Bakari is forty years old.
4. Bakari dyiri woygu.	4. Bakari is fifty years old.
D. 1. Ay dyiri woy.	D. 1. I'm ten years old.
2. Iri dyiri woy.	2. We're ten years old.
3. A dyiri woy.	3. He's/She's ten years old.
4. I dyiri woy.	4. They're ten years old.
E. 1. Bakari zen Amina?	E. 1. Is Bakari older than Amina?
2. Amina zen Maman?	2. Is Amina older than Maman?
3. Maman zen Fatu?	3. Is Maman older than Fatu?
4. Fatu zen Bakari?	4. Is Fatu older than Bakari?

F. 1. Bakari ga zanka nda Amina?	F. 1. Is Bakari younger than Amina?
2. Amina ga zanka nda Maman?	2. Is Amina younger than Maman?
3. Maman ga zanka nda Fatu?	3. Is Maman younger than Fatu?
4. Fatu ga zanka nda Bakari?	4. Is Fatu younger than Bakari?
G. 1. Ni zen ay?	G. 1. Are you older than I?
2. Aran zen a?	2. Are you older than he/she?
3. A zen iri?	3. Is he/she older than we?
4. Iri zen ey?	4. Are we older than they?
H. 1. Ni ga zanka nda ay?	H. 1. Are you younger than I?
2. Aran ga zanka nda a?	2. Are you younger than he/she?
3. A ga zanka nda iri?	3. Is he/she younger than we?
4. Iri ga zanka nda ey?	4. Are we younger than they?
I. 1. Bakari zen Amina.	I. 1. Bakari is older than Amina.
2. Amina zen Maman.	2. Amina is older than Maman.
3. Maman zen Fatu.	3. Maman is older than Fatu.
4. Fatu zen Bakari.	4. Fatu is older than Bakari.
J. 1. Bakari ga zanka nda Amina.	J. 1. Bakari is younger than Amina.
2. Amina ga zanka nda Maman.	2. Amina is younger than Maman.
3. Maman ga zanka nda Fatu.	3. Maman is younger than Fatu.
4. Fatu ga zanka nda Bakari.	4. Fatu is younger than Bakari.
K. 1. Ni zen ay.	K. 1. You're older than I.
2. Aran zen a.	2. You're older than he/she.
3. A zen iri.	3. He's/She's older than we.
4. Iri zen ey.	4. We're older than they.
L. 1. Ni ga zanka nda ay.	L. 1. You're younger than I.
2. Aran ga zanka nda a.	2. You're younger than he/she.
3. A ga zanka nda iri.	3. He's/She's younger than we.
4. Iri ga zanka nda ey.	4. We're younger than they.

M. 1.	Zanka mardye no aran kwara?	How many children are in your family?
	Zanka hi'ka no iri kwara.	There are two children in our family.
2.	Zanka mardye no aran kwara?	How many children are in your family?
	Zanka tatyi no iri kwara.	There are four children in our family.
3.	Zanka mardye no ni kwara?	How many children are in your family?
	Zanka iddu no ay kwara.	There are six children in my family.
4.	Zanka mardye no ni kwara?	How many children are in your family?
	Zanka ahakku no ay kwara.	There are eight children in my family.
N. 1.	Mi ga ti bero?	Are you the older brother/sister?
2.	I'ga ga ti bero?	Is he/she the older brother/sister?
3.	Bakari ga ti bero?	Is Bakari the older brother?
4.	Amina ga ti bero?	Is Amina the older sister?
O. 1.	Mi ga ti kayno?	Are you the younger brother/sister?
2.	I'ga ga ti kayno?	Is he/she the younger brother/sister?
3.	Bakari ga ti kayno?	Is Bakari the younger brother?
4.	Amina ga ti kayno?	Is Amina the younger sister?
P. 1.	Ay ga ti bero.	I'm the older brother/sister.
2.	I'ga ga ti bero.	He's/She's the older brother/sister.
3.	Bakari ga ti bero.	Bakari is the older brother.
4.	Amina ga ti bero.	Amina is the older sister.

Q. 1. Ay ga ti kayno.	Q. 1. I'm the younger brother/sister.
2. I'ga ga ti kayno.	2. He's/She's the younger brother/sister.
3. Bakari ga ti kayno.	3. Bakari is the younger brother.
4. Amina ga ti kayno.	4. Amina is the younger sister.
R. 1. Ni ga ti i kulu bero?	R. 1. Are you the oldest brother/sister?
2. I'ga ga ti i kulu bero?	2. Is he/she the oldest brother/sister?
3. Bakari ga ti i kulu bero?	3. Is Bakari the oldest brother?
4. Amina ga ti i kulu bero?	4. Is Amina the oldest sister?
S. 1. Ni ga ti i kulu kayno?	S. 1. Are you the youngest brother/sister?
2. I'ga ga ti i kulu kayno?	2. Is he/she the youngest brother/sister?
3. Bakari ga ti i kulu kayno?	3. Is Bakari the youngest brother?
4. Amina ga ti i kulu kayno?	4. Is Amina the youngest sister?
T. 1. Ay ga ti i kulu bero.	T. 1. I'm the oldest brother/sister.
2. I'ga ga ti i kulu bero.	2. He's/She's the oldest brother/sister.
3. Bakari ga ti i kulu bero.	3. Bakari is the oldest brother.
4. Amina ga ti i kulu bero.	4. Amina is the oldest sister.
U. 1. Ay ga ti i kulu kayno.	U. 1. I'm the youngest brother/sister.
2. I'ga ga ti i kulu kayno.	2. He's/She's the youngest brother/sister.
3. Bakari ga ti i kulu kayno.	3. Bakari is the youngest brother.
4. Amina ga ti i kulu kayno.	4. Amina is the youngest sister.
V. 1. Bakari zen da'ga Amina?	V. 1. Is Bakari as old as Amina?
2. Amina zen da'ga Maman?	2. Is Amina as old as Maman?
3. Maman zen da'ga Fatu?	3. Is Maman as old as Fatu?
4. Fatu zen da'ga Bakari?	4. Is Fatu as old as Bakari?

W. 1.	Bakari ga zanka da'ga Amina?	W. 1.	Is Bakari as young as Amina?
2.	Amina ga zanka da'ga Maman?	2.	Is Amina as young as Maman?
3.	Maman ga zanka da'ga Fatu?	3.	Is Maman as young as Fatu?
4.	Fatu ga zanka da'ga Bakari?	4.	Is Fatu as young as Bakari?
X. 1.	Ni zen da'ga ay?	X. 1.	Are you as old as I?
2.	Aran zen da'ga i'ga?	2.	Are you as old as he/she?
3.	A zen da'ga iri?	3.	Is he/she as old as we?
4.	Iri zen da'ga i'gey?	4.	Are we as old as they?
Y. 1.	Ni ga zanka da'ga ay?	Y. 1.	Are you as young as I?
2.	Aran ga zanka da'ga i'ga?	2.	Are you as young as he/she?
3.	A ga zanka da'ga iri?	3.	Is he/she as young as we?
4.	Iri ga zanka da'ga i'gey?	4.	Are we as young as they?
Z. 1.	Bakari zen da'ga Amina.	Z. 1.	Bakari is as old as Amina.
2.	Amina zen da'ga Maman.	2.	Amina is as old as Maman.
3.	Maman zen da'ga Fatu.	3.	Maman is as old as Fatu.
4.	Fatu zen da'ga Bakari.	4.	Fatu is as old as Bakari.
AA. 1.	Bakari ga zanka da'ga Amina.	AA. 1.	Bakari is as young as Amina.
2.	Amina ga zanka da'ga Maman.	2.	Amina is as young as Maman.
3.	Maman ga zanka da'ga Fatu.	3.	Maman is as young as Fatu.
4.	Fatu ga zanka da'ga Bakari.	4.	Fatu is as young as Bakari.
BB. 1.	Ni zen da'ga ay.	BB. 1.	You're as old as I.
2.	Aran zen da'ga i'ga.	2.	You're as old as he/she.
3.	A zen da'ga iri.	3.	He's/She's as old as we.
4.	Iri zen da'ga i'gey.	4.	We're as old as they.
CC. 1.	Ni ga zanka da'ga ay.	CC. 1.	You're as young as I.
2.	Aran ga zanka da'ga i'ga.	2.	You're as young as he/she.
3.	A ga zanka da'ga iri.	3.	He's/She's as young as we.
4.	Iri ga zanka da'ga i'gey.	4.	We're as young as they.

DD. 1.	Bakari mana zen da'ga Amina.	DD. 1.	Bakari isn't as old as Amina.
2.	Amina mana zen da'ga Maman.	2.	Amina isn't as old as Maman.
3.	Maman mana zen da'ga Fatu.	3.	Maman isn't as old as Fatu.
4.	Fatu mana zen da'ga Bakari.	4.	Fatu isn't as old as Bakari.
EE. 1.	Bakari si zanka da'ga Amina.	EE. 1.	Bakari isn't as young as Amina.
2.	Amina si zanka da'ga Maman.	2.	Amina isn't as young as Maman.
3.	Maman si zanka da'ga Fatu.	3.	Maman isn't as young as Fatu.
4.	Fatu si zanka da'ga Bakari.	4.	Fatu isn't as young as Bakari.
FF. 1.	Ni mana zen da'ga ay.	FF. 1.	You're not as old as I.
2.	Aran mana zen da'ga i'ga.	2.	You're not as old as he/she.
3.	A mana zen da'ga iri.	3.	He's/She's not as old as we.
4.	Iri mana zen da'ga i'gey.	4.	We're not as old as they.
GG. 1.	Ni si zanka da'ga ay.	GG. 1.	You're not as young as I.
2.	Aran si zanka da'ga i'ga.	2.	You're not as young as he/she.
3.	A si zanka da'ga iri.	3.	He's/She's not as young as we.
4.	Iri si zanka da'ga i'gey.	4.	We're not as young as they.

UNIT 26

Dialogue 1

ma	to feel
dama	well-being (def./indef. sg.)
A: A go ga ma dama?	A: Is he feeling well?
dori	sickness (indef. sg.)
B: Ha'a, a go ga ma dori.	B: No, he's feeling bad.
korno	fever (def.)
A: A korno te dama gumo?	A: Is his fever better?
B: Ha'a.	B: No.
kotwa	coughing (def.)
ka'kam	to oppress
A: Manti a kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo?	A: Isn't his coughing worse?
B: Oho, a go ga ka'kam gumo.	B: Yes, it's worse.
no	to give
safaro	medicine (def.)
A: Ni na a no safaro?[1]	A: Have you given him the medicine?
hara'di[2]	to make hungry
B: Oho. Amma a ga a hara'di.	B: Yes. But it makes him hungry.

Dialogue 2

A: Ni go ga ma dama gumo?	A: Are you feeling better?
B: Ha'a, ay go ga ma dori gumo.	B: No, I'm feeling worse.
A: Ni kotwa go ga ka'kam?	A: Is your coughing bad?

B: Oho.	B: Yes.
yero	vomiting (def.)
A: Manti ni yero te dama gumo?	A: Isn't your vomiting better?
B: Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam.	B: No, it's bad.
A: Ni na safaro ha'?	A: Have you taken the medicine?
dyewa'di[2]	to make thirsty
B: Oho. Amma a ga ay dyewa'di.	B: Yes. But it makes me thirsty.

Dialogue 3

A: Ni go ga ma dori?	A: Are you feeling bad?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.
A: Ni yero go ga ka'kam gumo?	A: Is your vomiting worse?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.
A: Manti ni korno go ga ka'kam?	A: Isn't your fever bad?
B: Ha'a, a te dama gumo.	B: No, it's better.
A: Ni no safaro ha'?	A: Have you taken the medicine?
dyirba'di[2]	to make sleepy
B: Oho. Amma a ga ay dyirba'di.	B: Yes. But it makes me sleepy.

Dialogue 4

A: A go ga ma dori gumo?	A: Is he feeling worse?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.

soro	diarrhea (def.)
A: A soro te dama?	A: Is his diarrhea over?
B: Ha'a.	B: No.
A: Manti a yero te dama?	A: Isn't his vomiting over?
B: Oho, a te dama.	B: Yes, it's over.
A: Mi na a no safaro?	A: Have you given him the medicine?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. With no 'to give,' like some other verbs, the direct object follows the predicate.
2. The suffix -a'di can be added to most verbs to denote causative action.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Mi go ga ma dama?	A. 1. Are you feeling well?
2. Aran go ga ma dama?	2. Are you feeling well?
3. A go ga ma dama?	3. Is he/she feeling well?
4. I go ga ma dama?	4. Are they feeling well?
B. 1. Mi go ga ma dama gumo?	B. 1. Are you feeling better?
2. Aran go ga ma dama gumo?	2. Are you feeling better?
3. A go ga ma dama gumo?	3. Is he/she feeling better?
4. I go ga ma dama gumo?	4. Are they feeling better?
C. 1. Mi go ga ma dori?	C. 1. Are you feeling bad?
2. Aran go ga ma dori?	2. Are you feeling bad?
3. A go ga ma dori?	3. Is he/she feeling bad?
4. I go ga ma dori?	4. Are they feeling bad?

D. 1. Ni go ga ma dori gumo?	D. 1. Are you feeling worse?
2. Aran go ga ma dori gumo?	2. Are you feeling worse?
3. A go ga ma dori gumo?	3. Is he/she feeling worse?
4. I go ga ma dori gumo?	4. Are they feeling worse?
E. 1. Ay go ga ma dama.	E. 1. I'm feeling well.
2. Iri go ga ma dama.	2. We're feeling well.
3. A go ga ma dama.	3. He's/She's feeling well.
4. I go ga ma dama.	4. They're feeling well.
F. 1. Ay go ga ma dama gumo.	F. 1. I'm feeling better.
2. Iri go ga ma dama gumo.	2. We're feeling better.
3. A go ga ma dama gumo.	3. He's/She's feeling better.
4. I go ga ma dama gumo.	4. They're feeling better.
G. 1. Ay go ga ma dori.	G. 1. I'm feeling bad.
2. Iri go ga ma dori.	2. We're feeling bad.
3. A go ga ma dori.	3. He's/She's feeling bad.
4. I go ga ma dori.	4. They're feeling bad.
H. 1. Ay go ga ma dori gumo.	H. 1. I'm feeling worse.
2. Iri go ga ma dori gumo.	2. We're feeling worse.
3. A go ga ma dori gumo.	3. He's/She's feeling worse.
4. I go ga ma dori gumo.	4. They're feeling worse.
I, 1. Ni korno te dama?	I. 1. Is your fever over?
2. Ni kotwa te dama?	2. Is your coughing over?
3. Ni yero te dama?	3. Is your vomiting over?
4. Ni soro te dama?	4. Is your diarrhea over?
J. 1. A kerno te dama gumo?	J. 1. Is his/her fever better?
2. A kotwa te dama gumo?	2. Is his/her coughing better?
3. A yero te dama gumo?	3. Is his/her vomiting better?
4. A soro te dama gumo?	4. Is his/her diarrhea better?

K. 1. Ni korno go ga ka'kam?	K. 1. Is your fever bad?
2. Ni kotwa go ga ka'kam?	2. Is your coughing bad?
3. Ni yaro go ga ka'kam?	3. Is your vomiting bad?
4. Ni soro go ga ka'kam?	4. Is your diarrhea bad?
L. 1. A korno go ga ka'kam gumo?	L. 1. Is his/her fever worse?
2. A kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo?	2. Is his/her coughing worse?
3. A yaro go ga ka'kam gumo?	3. Is his/her vomiting worse?
4. A soro go ga ka'kam gumo?	4. Is his/her diarrhea worse?
M. 1. Ay korno te dama.	M. 1. My fever is over.
2. Ay kotwa te dama.	2. My coughing is over.
3. Ay yaro te dama.	3. My vomiting is over.
4. Ay soro te dama.	4. My diarrhea is over.
N. 1. A korno te dama gumo.	N. 1. His/Her fever is better.
2. A kotwa te dama gumo.	2. His/Her coughing is better.
3. A yaro te dama gumo.	3. His/Her vomiting is better.
4. A soro te dama gumo.	4. His/Her diarrhea is better.
O. 1. Ay korno go ga ka'kam.	O. 1. My fever is bad.
2. Ay kotwa go ga ka'kam.	2. My coughing is bad.
3. Ay yaro go ga ka'kam.	3. My vomiting is bad.
4. Ay soro go ga ka'kam.	4. My diarrhea is bad.
P. 1. A korno go ga ka'kam gumo.	P. 1. His/Her fever is worse.
2. A kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo.	2. His/Her coughing is worse.
3. A yaro go ga ka'kam gumo.	3. His/Her vomiting is worse.
4. A soro go ga ka'kam gumo.	4. His/Her diarrhea is worse.
Q. 1. Manti ni korno te dama? Oho, a te dama.	Q. 1. Isn't your fever over? Yes, it's over.
2. Manti ni kotwa te dama? Oho, a te dama.	2. Isn't your coughing over? Yes, it's over.

3. Manti ni yero te dama?	3. Isn't your vomiting over?
Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam.	No, it's bad.
4. Manti ni soro te dama?	4. Isn't your diarrhea over?
Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam.	No, it's bad.
R. 1. Manti a korno te dama gumo?	R. 1. Isn't his/her fever better?
Oho, a te dama gumo.	Yes, it's better.
2. Manti a kotwa te dama gumo?	2. Isn't his/her coughing better?
Oho, a te dama gumo.	Yes, it's better.
3. Manti a yero te dama gumo?	3. Isn't his/her vomiting better?
Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam gumo.	No, it's worse.
4. Manti a soro te dama gumo?	4. Isn't his/her diarrhea better?
Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam gumo.	No, it's worse.
S. 1. Manti ni korno go ga ka'kam?	S. 1. Isn't your fever bad?
Oho, a go ga ka'kam.	Yes, it's bad.
2. Manti ni kotwa go ga ka'kam?	2. Isn't your coughing bad?
Oho, a go ga ka'kam.	Yes, it's bad.
3. Manti ni yero go ga ka'kam?	3. Isn't your vomiting bad?
Ha'a, a te dama.	No, it's over.
4. Manti ni soro go ga ka'kam?	4. Isn't your diarrhea bad?
Ha'a, a te dama.	No, it's over.
T. 1. Manti a korno go ga ka'kam gumo?	T. 1. Isn't his/her fever worse?
Oho, a go ga ka'kam gumo.	Yes, it's worse.
2. Manti a kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo?	2. Isn't his/her coughing worse?
Oho, a go ga ka'kam gumo.	Yes, it's worse.
3. Manti a yero go ga ka'kam gumo?	3. Isn't his/her vomiting worse?
Ha'a, a te dama gumo.	No, it's better.
4. Manti a soro go ga ka'kam gumo?	4. Isn't his/her diarrhea worse?
Ha'a, a te dama gumo.	No, it's better.

U. 1. A ga ay hara'di.	U. 1. It makes me hungry.
2. A ga ay dyewa'di.	2. It makes me thirsty.
3. A go ay dyirba'di.	3. It makes me sleepy.
V. 1. A ga a hara'di.	V. 1. It makes him/her hungry.
2. A ga a dyewa'di.	2. It makes him/her thirsty.
3. A ga a dyirba'di.	3. It makes him/her sleepy.
W. 1. Ni na safaro ha'?	W. 1. Have you taken the medicine?
Oho. Amma a ga ay hara'di.	Yes. But it makes me hungry.
2. Ni na safaro ha'?	2. Have you taken the medicine?
Oho. Amma a ga ay dyewa'di.	Yes. But it makes me thirsty.
3. Ni na safaro ha'?	3. Have you taken the medicine?
Oho. Amma a ga ay dyirba'di.	Yes. But it makes me sleepy.
X. 1. Ni na a no safaro?	X. 1. Have you given him/her the medicine?
Ohe. Amma a ga a hara'di.	Yes. But it makes him/her hungry.
2. Ni na a no safaro?	2. Have you given him/her the medicine?
Oho. Amma a ga a dyewa'di.	Yes. But it makes him/her thirsty.
3. Ni na a no safaro?	3. Have you given him/her the medicine?
Oho. Amma a ga a dyirba'di.	Yes. But it makes him/her sleepy.

UNIT 27

Dialogue 1

A: Za wati fo no ni si'da bani?	A: How long have you been sick?
habo	week (def.)
habo ka' bisa	last week
B: Ay si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.	B: I've been sick since last week.
A: I fo no ni ga?	A: What's the matter with you?
soru	to have diarrhea
B: Ay go ga soru.	B: I have diarrhea.
koro'	to have fever
A: Ni go ga koro'?	A: Do you have a fever?
B: Oho.	B: Yes.

Dialogue 2

A: Za wati fo no a si'da bani?	A: How long has he been sick?
bifo	day before yesterday
B: A si'da bani za bifo.	B: He's been sick since day before yesterday.
A: I fo no a ga?	A: What's the matter with him?
yeri	to vomit
B: A go ga yeri.	B: He vomits.
koto	to cough
A: A go ga koto?	A: Does he cough?
B: Ha'a.	B: No.

Dialogue 3

ma	(signals a polite Imperative sg.)
ka'de	to bring
habu	week (indef.)
bene	above
habu bene	next week
A: Ma ka'de a habu bene.	A: Bring him (back) next week.
B: Habu bene?	B: Next week?
lokotoro	doctor (indef.)
lokotoro kwara	dispensary (indef.)
A: Oho. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara habu bene.	A: Yes. Bring him (back) to the dispensary next week.

Dialogue 4

A: Ma ka alasar.	A: Come (back) early this evening.
B: Alasar?	B: Early this evening?
wodin banda	and then, after that
suba si	day after tomorrow
A: Oho. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara suba si.	A: Yes. And then come to the dispensary day after tomorrow.

Dialogue 5

ye	to return
A: Ay ga ye ga ka[1] alula.	A: I'll come (back) early this afternoon.
B: Alula?	B: Early this afternoon?

ko'da	to take, escort
wone	this
habu wone ra	this week
A: Oho. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara habu wone ra.	A: Yes. And then take him to the dispensary this week.

Note on the Dialogues

1. Literally, ga ye ga ka means "will return and come."

Structural Drills

A. 1. Za wati fo no ni si'da bani?	A. 1. How long have you been sick?
2. Za wati fo no aran si'da bani?	2. How long have you been sick?
3. Za wati fo no a si'da bani?	3. How long has he/she been sick?
4. Za wati fo no i si'da bani?	4. How long have they been sick?
B. 1. Ay si'da bani za bi.	B. 1. I've been sick since yesterday.
2. Ay si'da bani za bifo.	2. I've been sick since day before yesterday.
3. Ay si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.	3. I've been sick since last week.
C. 1. Iri si'da bani za bi.	C. 1. We've been sick since yesterday.
2. Iri si'da bani za bifo.	2. We've been sick since day before yesterday.
3. Iri si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.	3. We've been sick since last week.
D. 1. A si'da bani za bi.	D. 1. He's/She's been sick since yesterday.
2. A si'da bani za bifo.	2. He's/She's been sick since day before yesterday.
3. A si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.	3. He's/She's been sick since last week.

E. 1. I si'da bani za bi.	E. 1. They've been sick since yesterday.
2. I si'da bani za bifo.	2. They've been sick since day before yesterday.
3. I si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.	3. They've been sick since last week.
F. 1. I fo no ni ga?	F. 1. What's the matter with you?
2. I fo no aran ga?	2. What's the matter with you?
3. I fo no a ga?	3. What's the matter with him/her?
4. I fo no i ga?	4. What's the matter with them?
G. 1. Ni go ga soru?	G. 1. Do you have diarrhea?
2. Aran go ga soru?	2. Do you have diarrhea?
3. A go ga soru?	3. Does he/she have diarrhea?
4. I go ga soru?	4. Do they have diarrhea?
H. 1. Ni go ga koro'?	H. 1. Do you have a fever?
2. Aran go ga koro'?	2. Do you have a fever?
3. A go ga koro'?	3. Does he/she have a fever?
4. I go ga koro'?	4. Do they have a fever?
I. 1. Ni go ga yeri?	I. 1. Do you vomit?
2. Aran go ga yeri?	2. Do you vomit?
3. A go ga yeri?	3. Does he/she vomit?
4. I go ga yeri?	4. Do they vomit?
J. 1. Ni go ga koto?	J. 1. Do you cough?
2. Aran go ga koto?	2. Do you cough?
3. A go ga koto?	3. Does he/she cough?
4. I go ga koto?	4. Do they cough?
K. 1. Ay go ga soru.	K. 1. I have diarrhea.
2. Ay go ga koro'.	2. I have a fever.
3. Ay go ga yeri.	3. I vomit.
4. Ay go ga koto.	4. I cough.

L. 1. Iri go ga soru.	L. 1. We have diarrhea.
2. Iri go ga koro'.	2. We have a fever.
3. Iri go ga yeri.	3. We vomit.
4. Iri go ga koto.	4. We cough.
M. 1. A go ga soru.	M. 1. He/She has diarrhea.
2. A go ga koro'.	2. He/She have a fever.
3. A go ga yeri.	3. He/She vomits.
4. A go ga koto.	4. He/She coughs.
N. 1. I go ga soru.	N. 1. They have diarrhea.
2. I go ga koro'.	2. They have a fever.
3. I go ga yeri.	3. They vomit.
4. I go ga koto.	4. They cough.
O. 1. Ma ka'de a alula.	O. 1. Bring him/her (back) early this afternoon.
2. Ma ka'de a alasar.	2. Bring him/her (back) early this evening.
3. Ma ka'de a suba.	3. Bring him/her (back) tomorrow.
P. 1. Wodin banda ma ka'de a suba si.	P. 1. And then bring him/her (back) day after tomorrow.
2. Wodin banda ma ka'de a habu wone ra.	2. And then bring him/her (back) this week.
3. Wodin banda ma ka'de a habu bene.	3. And then bring him/her (back) next week.
Q. 1. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara alula.	Q. 1. Bring him/her (back) to the dispensary early this afternoon.
2. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara alasar.	2. Bring him/her (back) to the dispensary early this evening.
3. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara suba.	3. Bring him/her (back) to the dispensary tomorrow.

R. 1. Wodin banda ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara suba si.	R. 1. And then bring him/her (back) to the dispensary day after tomorrow.
2. Wodin banda ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara habu wone ra.	2. And then bring him/her (back) to the dispensary this week.
3. Wodin banda ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara habu bene.	3. And then bring him/her (back) to the dispensary next week.
S. 1. Ma ko'da a alula.	S. 1. Take him/her early this afternoon.
2. Ma ko'da a alasar.	2. Take him/her early this evening.
3. Ma ko'da a suba.	3. Take him/her tomorrow.
T. 1. Wodin banda ma ko'da a suba si.	T. 1. And then take him/her day after tomorrow.
2. Wodin bande ma ko'da a habu wone ra.	2. And then take him/her this week.
3. Wodin banda ma ko'da a habu bene.	3. And then take him/her next week.
U. 1. Ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara alula.	U. 1. Take him/her to the dispensary early this afternoon.
2. Ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara alasar.	2. Take him/her to the dispensary early this evening.
3. Ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara suba.	3. Take him/her to the dispensary tomorrow.
V. 1. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara suba si.	V. 1. And then take him/her to the dispensary day after tomorrow.
2. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara habu wone ra.	2. And then take him/her to the dispensary this week.
3. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara habu bene.	3. And then take him/her to the dispensary next week.
W. 1. Ma ka alula.	W. 1. Come (back) early this afternoon.
2. Ma ka alasar.	2. Come (back) early this evening.
3. Ma ka suba.	3. Come (back) tomorrow.

X.	1. Wodin banda ma ka suba si.	X. 1. And then come (back) day after tomorrow.
	2. Wodin banda ma ka habu wone ra.	2. And then come (back) this week.
	3. Wodin banda ma ka habu bene.	3. And then come (back) next week.
Y.	1. Ma ka lokotoro kwara alula.	Y. 1. Come (back) to the dispensary early this afternoon.
	2. Ma ka lokotoro kwara alasar.	2. Come (back) to the dispensary early this evening.
	3. Ma ka lokotoro kwara suba.	3. Come (back) to the dispensary tomorrow.
Z.	1. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara suba si.	Z. 1. And then come (back) to the dispensary day after tomorrow.
	2. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara habu wone ra.	2. And then come (back) to the dispensary this week.
	3. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara habu bene.	3. And then come (back) to the dispensary next week.
AA.	1. Ay ga ye ga ka alula.	AA. 1. I'll come (back) early this afternoon.
	2. Ay ga ye ga ka alasar.	2. I'll come (back) early this evening.
	3. Ay ga ye ga ka suba.	3. I'll come (back) tomorrow.
BB.	1. Iri ga ye ga ka suba si.	BB. 1. We'll come (back) day after tomorrow.
	2. Iri ga ye ga ka habu wone ra.	2. We'll come (back) this week.
	3. Iri ga ye ga ka habu bene.	3. We'll come (back) next week.
CC.	1. A ga ye ga ka alula.	CC. 1. He'll/She'll come (back) early this afternoon.
	2. A ga ye ga ka alasar.	2. He'll/She'll come (back) early this evening.
	3. A ga ye ga ka suba.	3. He'll/She'll come (back) tomorrow.

DD. 1. I ga ye ga ka suba si.	DD. 1. They'll come (back) day after tomorrow.
2. I ga ye ga ka habu wone ra.	2. They'll come (back) this week.
3. I ga ye ga ka habu bene.	3. They'll come (back) next week.

UNIT 28

Dialogue 1

ya	am/is/are
zarma	Djerma (def./indef. sg.)
A: Ni ya zarma no?	A: Are you a Djerma?
hawsa'tye	Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)
B: Ha'a, ay ya hawsa'tye no.	B: No, I'm a Hausa.
tyew	to study, read
fara'si	French (def./indef. sg.)
tyine	language (indef.)
A: Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?	A: Are you studying French?
i'gilisi	English (indef. sg.)
B: Ha'a, ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?	B: No, I'm studying English.
tyewa'di	to teach
A: May no go ga ni tyewa'di?	A: Who's teaching you?
tyewa'diko	teacher (indef.)
B: Ay si'da tyewa'diko.	B: I don't have a teacher.
hinne	alone
bo'	oneself
se	for
Ay hinne no go ga tyew ay bo' se.	I'm studying alone.

Dialogue 2

A: Paul ya fara'si boro no?	A: Is Paul a Frenchman?
amerike	American (indef. sg.)
B: Ha'a, i'ga ya amerike boro no.	B: No, he's an American.

A: A go ga tyew zarma tyine?	A: Is he studying Djerma?
hawsa	Hausa (language) (def./indef. sg.)
B: Ha'a, a go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	B: No, he's studying Hausa.
A: May no go ga a tyewa'di?	A: Who's teaching him?
B: A si'da tyewa'diko. I'ga hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	B: He doesn't have a teacher. He's studying alone.

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni ya zarma no?	A. 1. Are you a Djerma?
2. Ni ya hawsa'tye no?	2. Are you a Hausa?
3. Ni ya fara'si boro no?	3. Are you a Frenchman?
4. Ni ya amerike boro no?	4. Are you an American?
B. 1. I'ga ya zarma no?	B. 1. Is he/she a Djerma?
2. I'ga ya hawsa'tye no?	2. Is he/she a Hausa?
3. I'ga ya fara'si boro no?	3. Is he/she a Frenchman?
4. I'ga ya amerike boro no?	4. Is he/she an American?
C. 1. Amina ya zarma no?	C. 1. Is Amina a Djerma?
2. Yakuba ya zarma no?	2. Is Yakuba a Djerma?
3. Abdu ya zarma no?	3. Is Abdu a Djerma?
4. Fatu ya zarma no?	4. Is Fatu a Djerma?
D. 1. Amina ya hawsa'tye no?	D. 1. Is Amina a Hausa?
2. Yakuba ya hawsa'tye no?	2. Is Yakuba a Hausa?
3. Abdu ya hawsa'tye no?	3. Is Abdu a Hausa?
4. Fatu ya hawsa'tye no?	4. Is Fatu a Hausa?

E. 1. Ay ya zarma no.	E. 1. I'm a Djerma.
2. Ay ya hawsa'tye no.	2. I'm a Hausa.
3. Ay ya fara'si boro no.	3. I'm a Frenchman.
4. Ay ya amerike boro no.	4. I'm an American.
F. 1. I'ga ya zarma no.	F. 1. He's/She's a Djerma.
2. I'ga ya hawsa'tye no.	2. He's/She's a Hausa.
3. I'ga ya fara'si boro no.	3. He's/She's a Frenchman.
4. I'ga ya amerike boro no.	4. He's/She's an American.
G. 1. Amina ya zarma no.	G. 1. Amina is a Djerma
2. Yakuba ya zarma no.	2. Yakuba is a Djerma.
3. Abdu ya zarma no.	3. Abdu is a Djerma.
4. Fatu ya zarma no.	4. Fatu is a Djerma.
H. 1. Amina ya hawsa'tye no.	H. 1. Amina is a Hausa.
2. Yakuba ya hawsa'tye no.	2. Yakuba is a Hausa.
3. Abdu ya hawsa'tye no.	3. Abdu is a Hausa.
4. Fatu ya hawsa'tye no.	4. Fatu is a Hausa.
I. 1. Ni ya zarma no?	I. 1. Are you a Djerma?
Ha'a, ay ya hawsa'tye no.	No, I'm a Hausa.
2. Ni ya hawsa'tye no?	2. Are you a Hausa?
Ha'a, ay ya zarma no.	No, I'm a Djerma.
3. Ni ya fara'si boro no?	3. Are you a Frenchman?
Ha'a, ay ya amerike boro no.	No, I'm an American.
4. Ni ya amerike boro no?	4. Are you an American?
Ha'a, ay ya fara'si boro no.	No, I'm a Frenchman.
J. 1. I'ga ya zarma no?	J. 1. Is he/she a Djerma?
Ha'a, i'ga ya hawsa'tye no.	No, he's/she's a Hausa.
2. I'ga ya hawsa'tye no?	2. Is he/she a Hausa?
Ha'a, i'ga ya zarma no.	No, he's/she's a Djerma.
3. I'ga ya fara'si boro no?	3. Is he/she a Frenchman?
Ha'a, i'ga ya amerike boro no.	No, he's/she's an American.

4. I'ga ya amerike boro no?	4. Is he/she an American?
Ha'a, i'ga ya fara'si boro no.	No, he's/she's a Frenchman.
K. 1. Ni go ga tyew zarma tyine?	K. 1. Are you studying Djerma?
2. Ni go ga tyew hawsa tyine?	2. Are you studying Hausa?
3. Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?	3. Are you studying French?
4. Ni go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?	4. Are you studying English?
L. 1. Ni go ga tyew zarma tyine?	L. 1. Are you studying Djerma?
2. Aran go ga tyew zarma tyine?	2. Are you studying Djerma?
3. A go ga tyew zarma tyine?	3. Is he/she studying Djerma?
4. I go ga tyew zarma tyine?	4. Are they studying Djerma?
M. 1. Ni go ga tyew hawsa tyine?	M. 1. Are you studying Hausa?
2. Aran go ga tyew hawsa tyine?	2. Are you studying Hausa?
3. A go ga tyew hawsa tyine?	3. Is he/she studying Hausa?
4. I go ga tyew hawsa tyine?	4. Are they studying Hausa?
N. 1. Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?	N. 1. Are you studying French?
2. Aran go ga tyew fara'si tyine?	2. Are you studying French?
3. A go ga tyew fara'si tyine?	3. Is he/she studying French?
4. I go ga tyew fara'si tyine?	4. Are they studying French?
O. 1. Ni go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?	O. 1. Are you studying English?
2. Aran go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?	2. Are you studying English?
3. A go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?	3. Is he/she studying English?
4. I go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?	4. Are they studying English?
P. 1. Ay go ga tyew zarma tyine.	P. 1. I'm studying Djerma.
2. Ay go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	2. I'm studying Hausa.
3. Ay go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	3. I'm studying French.
4. Ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	4. I'm studying English.
Q. 1. Ay go ga tyew zarma tyine.	Q. 1. I'm studying Djerma.
2. Iri go ga tyew zarma tyine.	2. We're studying Djerma.
3. A go ga tyew zarma tyine.	3. He's/She's studying Djerma.
4. I go ga tyew zarma tyine.	4. They're studying Djerma.

R. 1. Ay go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	R. 1. I'm studying Hausa.
2. Iri go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	2. We're studying Hausa.
3. A go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	3. He's/She's studying Hausa.
4. I go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	4. They're studying Hausa.
S. 1. Ay go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	S. 1. I'm studying French.
2. Iri go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	2. We're studying French.
3. A go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	3. He's/She's studying French.
4. I go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	4. They're studying French.
T. 1. Ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	T. 1. I'm studying English.
2. Iri go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	2. We're studying English.
3. A go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	3. He's/She's studying English.
4. I go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	4. They're studying English.
U. 1. Ni go ga tyew zarma tyine? Ha'a, ay go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	U. 1. Are you studying Djerma? No, I'm studying Hausa.
2. Aran go ga tyew zarma tyine? Ha'a, iri go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	2. Are you studying Djerma? No, we're studying French.
3. A go ga tyew zarma tyine? Ha'a, a go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	3. Is he/she studying Djerma? No, he's/she's studying English.
V. 1. I go ga tyew hawsa tyine? Ha'a, i go ga tyew zarma tyine.	V. 1. Are they studying Hausa? No, they're studying Djerma.
2. Ni go ga tyew hawsa tyine? Ha'a, ay go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	2. Are you studying Hausa? No, I'm studying French.
3. Aran go ga tyew hawsa tyine? Ha'a, iri go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	3. Are you studying Hausa? No, we're studying English.

W. 1. A go ga tyew fara'si tyine? Ha'a, a go ga tyew zarma tyine.	W. 1. Is he/she studying French? No, he's/she's studying Djerma.
2. I go ga tyew fara'si tyine? Ha'a, i go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	2. Are they studying French? No, they're studying Hausa.
3. Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine? Ha'a, ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.	3. Are you studying French? No, I'm studying English.
X. 1. Aran go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine? Ha'a, iri go ga tyew zarma tyine.	X. 1. Are you studying English? No, we're studying Djerma.
2. A go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine? Ha'a, a go ga tyew hawsa tyine.	2. Is he/she studying English? No, he's/she's studying Hausa.
3. I go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine? Ha'a, i go ga tyew fara'si tyine.	3. Are they studying English? No, they're studying French.
Y. 1. May no go ga ni tyewa'di?	Y. 1. Who's teaching you?
2. May no go ga aran tyewa'di?	2. Who's teaching you?
3. May no go ga a tyewa'di?	3. Who's teaching him/her?
4. May no go ga i tyewa'di?	4. Who's teaching them?
Z. 1. May no go ga Amina tyewa'di?	Z. 1. Who's teaching Amina?
2. May no go ga Yakuba tyewa'di?	2. Who's teaching Yakuba?
3. May no go ga Abdu tyewa'di?	3. Who's teaching Abdu?
4. May no go ga Fatu tyewa'di?	4. Who's teaching Fatu?
AA. 1. Ay si'da tyewa'diko.	AA. 1. I don't have a teacher.
2. Iri si'da tyewa'diko.	2. We don't have a teacher.
3. A si'da tyewa'diko.	3. He/She doesn't have a teacher.
4. I si'da tyewa'diko.	4. They don't have a teacher.

BB. 1. Amina si'da tyewa'diko.	BB. 1. Amina doesn't have a teacher.
2. Yakuba si'da tyewa'diko.	2. Yakuba doesn't have a teacher.
3. Abdu si'da tyewa'diko.	3. Abdu doesn't have a teacher.
4. Fatu si'da tyewa'diko.	4. Fatu doesn't have a teacher.
CC. 1. Ay hinne no go ga tyew ay bo' se.	CC. 1. I'm studying alone.
2. Iri hinne no go ga tyew iri bo' se.	2. We're studying alone.
3. I'ga hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	3. He's/She's studying alone.
4. I'gey hinne no go ga tyew i'gey bo' se.	4. They're studying alone.
DD. 1. Amina hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	DD. 1. Amina is studying alone.
2. Yakuba hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	2. Yakuba is studying alone.
3. Abdu hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	3. Abdu is studying alone.
4. Fatu hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	4. Fatu is studying alone.
EE. 1. May no go ga ni tyewa'di? Ay si'da tyewa'diko. Ay hinne no go ga tyew ay bo' se.	EE. 1. Who's teaching you? I don't have a teacher. I'm studying alone.
2. May no go ga aran tyewa'di? Iri si'da tyewa'diko. Iri hinne no go ga tyew iri bo' se.	2. Who's teaching you? We don't have a teacher. We're studying alone.
3. May no ga Amina tyewa'di? A si'da tyewa'diko. I'ga hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.	3. Who's teaching Amina? She doesn't have a teacher. She's studying alone.

UNIT 29

Dialogue 1

marga	meeting (def./indef.)
wati kulu	always, any time
A: Bakari ga koy wati kulu marga fuwo do?	A: Does Bakari always go to the meeting hall?
ba	even
tye	time, occasion (indef.)
B: A si koy ba tye fo.	B: He never goes.
A: Ni ga koy wati kulu?	A: Do you always go?
B: Ay ga koy wati kulu.	B: I always go.

Dialogue 2

hay	thing (indef.)
hay fo	something
A: Ay ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	A: I want something to read.
hin	can/may
tira	book (def./indef.)
no'gu	place (indef.)
no'gu fo	somewhere
Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	Can I buy this book somewhere?
no'gu kulu	anywhere, everywhere
B: Ni si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	B: You can't buy it anywhere.
hi	to borrow
hay kulu	anything, everything
Amma ni ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go iri se[1] ne.	But you may borrow anything we have here.

Dialogue 3

A: Ay tyew hay kulu ka' go iri se ne. Ay ga hin ga tira wone hi?	A: I've read everything we have here. May I borrow this book?
B: Ni ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	B: You may borrow it any time.

Dialogue 4

A: Ay si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	A: I have nothing to read.
labari	news (indef. sg.)
labari tira	newspapaer (def./indef. sg.)
Ay ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	Can I buy this newspaper anywhere?
B: Ni ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	B: You can buy it everywhere.

Dialogue 5

wani	to know, speak
boro fo	someone
A: Ni kwara boro fo ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	A: Does someone speak English in your village?
boro kulu	anyone
B: Ha'a, ay kwara boro kulu si wani i'gilisi tyine.	B: No, no one speaks English in my village.

Dialogue 6

A: Aran kwara boro kulu ga wani fara'si tyine?	A: Does anyone speak French in your village?
borey	people (def.)
borey kulu	everyone
B: Oho, iri kwara borey kulu ga wani fara'si tyine.	B: Yes, everyone speaks French in our village.

Note on the Dialogues

1. go se has the meaning "to have."

Structural Drills

A. 1.	Ni ga koy wati kulu marga fuwo do?	Do you always go to the meeting hall?
2.	Aran ga koy wati kulu marga fuwo do?	Do you always go to the meeting hall?
3.	A ga koy wati kulu marga fuwo do?	Does he/she always go to the meeting hall?
4.	I ga koy wati kulu marga fuwo do?	Do they always go to the meeting hall?
B. 1.	Bakari ga koy wati kulu marga?	Does Bakari always go to the meeting?
2.	Maman ga koy wati kulu marga?	Does Maman always go to the meeting?
3.	Amina ga koy wati kulu marga?	Does Amina always go to the meeting?
4.	Abdu ga koy wati kulu marga?	Does Abdu always go to the meeting?
C. 1.	Ay ga koy wati kulu.	I always go.
2.	Iri ga koy wati kulu.	We always go.
3.	A ga koy wati kulu.	He/She always goes.
4.	I ga koy wati kulu.	They always go.
D. 1.	Bakari ga koy wati kulu.	Bakari always goes.
2.	Maman ga koy wati kulu.	Maman always goes.
3.	Amina ga koy wati kulu.	Amina always goes.
4.	Abdu ga koy wati kulu.	Abdu always goes.

E. 1. Ay si koy ba tye fo.	E. 1. I never go.
2. Iri si koy ba tye fo.	2. We never go.
3. A si koy ba tye fo.	3. He/She never goes.
4. I si koy ba tye fo.	4. They never go.
F. 1. Bakari si koy ba tye fo.	F. 1. Bakari never goes.
2. Maman si koy ba tye fo.	2. Maman never goes.
3. Amina si koy ba tye fo.	3. Amina never goes.
4. Abdu si koy ba tye fo.	4. Abdu never goes.
G. 1. Ay ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	G. 1. I want something to read.
2. Iri ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	2. We want something to read.
3. A ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	3. He/She wants something to read.
4. I ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	4. They want something to read.
H. 1. Bakari ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	H. 1. Bakari wants something to read.
2. Maman ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	2. Maman wants something to read.
3. Amina ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	3. Amina wants something to read.
4. Abdu ga ba hay fo ga tyew.	4. Abdu wants something to read.
I. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	I. 1. Can I buy this book somewhere?
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	2. Can we buy this book somewhere?
3. A ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	3. Can he/she buy this book somewhere?
4. I ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	4. Can they buy this book somewhere?
J. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	J. 1. Can I buy this book everywhere?
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	2. Can we buy this book everywhere?

3. A ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	3. Can he/she buy this book everywhere?
4. I ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	4. Can they buy this book everywhere?
K. 1. Ni ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	K. 1. You can buy it everywhere.
2. Aran ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	2. You can buy it everywhere.
3. A ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	3. He/She can buy it everywhere.
4. I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	4. They can buy it everywhere.
L. 1. Ni si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	L. 1. You can't buy it anywhere.
2. Aran si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	2. You can't buy it anywhere.
3. A si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	3. He/She can't buy it anywhere.
4. I si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	4. They can't buy it anywhere.
M. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	M. 1. Can I buy this book somewhere?
Ni ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	You can buy it everywhere.
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	2. Can we buy this book everywhere?
Aran si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	You can't buy it anywhere.

3. A ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?	3. Can he/she buy this book somewhere?
A si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	He/She can't buy it anywhere.
4. I ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	4. Can they buy this book anywhere?
I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	They can buy it everywhere.
N. 1. Amma ni ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	N. 1. But you may borrow anything we have here.
2. Amma aran ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	2. But you may borrow anything we have here.
3. Amma a ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	3. But he/she may borrow anything we have here.
4. Amma i ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	4. But they may borrow anything we have here.
O. 1. Amma Bakari ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go ay se ne.	O. 1. But Bakari may borrow anything I have here.
2. Amma Maman ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go ay se ne.	2. But Maman may borrow anything I have here.
3. Amma Amina ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go ay se ne.	3. But Amina may borrow anything I have here.
4. Amma Abdu ga hin ga hi hay kulu ka' go ay se ne.	4. But Abdu may borrow anything I have here.
P. 1. Ay tyew hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	P. 1. I've read everything we have here.
2. Iri tyew hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	2. We've read everything we have here.
3. A tyew hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	3. He's/She's read everything we have here.
4. I tyew hay kulu ka' go iri se ne.	4. They've read everything we have here.

Q. 1. Bakari tyew hay kulu ka' go a se ne.	Q. 1. Bakari has read everything he has here.
2. Maman tyew hay kulu ka' go a se ne.	2. Maman has read everything he has here.
3. Amina tyew hay kulu ka' go a se ne.	3. Amina has read everything she has here.
4. Abdu tyew hay kulu ka' go a se ne.	4. Abdu has read everything he has here.
R. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone hi?	R. 1. May I borrow this book?
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone hi?	2. May we borrow this book?
3. A ga hin ga tira wone hi?	3. May he/she borrow this book?
4. I ga hin ga tira wone hi?	4. May they borrow this book?
S. 1. Ay ga hin ga a hi?	S. 1. May I borrow it?
2. Iri ga hin ga a hi?	2. May we borrow it?
3. A ga hin ga a hi?	3. May he/she borrow it?
4. I ga hin ga a hi?	4. May they borrow it?
T. 1. Ni ga hin ga tira wone hi wati kulu.	T. 1. You may borrow this book any time.
2. Aran ga hin ga tira wone hi wati kulu.	2. You may borrow this book any time.
3. A ga hin ga tira wone hi wati kulu.	3. He/She may borrow this book any time.
4. I ga hin ga tira wone hi wati kulu.	4. They may borrow this book any time.
U. 1. Ni ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	U. 1. You may borrow it any time.
2. Aran ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	2. You may borrow it any time.
3. A ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	3. He/She may borrow it any time.
4. I ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	4. They may borrow it any time.

V. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone hi? Ni ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	V. 1. May I borrow this book? You may borrow it any time.
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone hi? Aran ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	2. May we borrow this book? You may borrow it any time.
3. A ga hin ga tira wone hi? A ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	3. May he/she borrow this book? He/She may borrow it any time.
4. I ga hin ga tira wone hi? I ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.	4. May they borrow this book? They may borrow it any time.
W. 1. Ay si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	W. 1. I have nothing to read.
2. Iri si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	2. We have nothing to read.
3. A si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	3. He/She has nothing to read.
4. I si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	4. They have nothing to read.
X. 1. Bakari si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	X. 1. Bakari has nothing to read.
2. Maman si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	2. Maman has nothing to read.
3. Amina si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	3. Amina has nothing to read.
4. Abdu si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.	4. Abdu has nothing to read.
Y. 1. Ay ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	Y. 1. Can I buy this newspaper anywhere?
2. Iri ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	2. Can we buy this newspaper anywhere?
3. A ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	3. Can he/she buy this newspaper anywhere?
4. I ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu?	4. Can they buy this newspaper anywhere?

Z. 1. Ay ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?	Z. 1. Can I buy it anywhere?
2. Iri ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?	2. Can we buy it anywhere?
3. A ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?	3. Can he/she buy it anywhere?
4. I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?	4. Can they buy it anywhere?
AA. 1. Mi ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu.	AA. 1. You can buy this newspaper everywhere.
2. Aran ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu.	2. You can buy this newspaper everywhere.
3. A ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu.	3. He/She can buy this newspaper everywhere.
4. I ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu.	4. They can buy this newspaper everywhere.
BB. 1. Mi ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	BB. 1. You can buy it everywhere.
2. Aran ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	2. You can buy it everywhere.
3. A ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	3. He/She can buy it everywhere.
4. I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	4. They can buy it everywhere.
CC. 1. Ay ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu? Mi si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	CC. 1. Can I buy this newspaper everywhere? You can't buy it anywhere.
2. Iri ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu? Aran si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	2. Can we buy this newspaper everywhere? You can't buy it anywhere.
3. A ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu? A si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	3. Can he/she buy this newspaper everywhere? He/She can't buy it anywhere.
4. I ga hin ga labari tira wone dey no'gu kulu? I si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.	4. Can they buy this newspaper everywhere? They can't buy it anywhere.

DD. 1. Ni kwara boro fo ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	DD. 1. Does someone speak English in your village?
2. Ni kwara boro kulu ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	2. Does anyone speak English in your village?
3. Ni kwara boro kulu si wani i'gilisi tyine?	3. Does no one speak English in your village?
4. Ni kwara borey kulu ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	4. Does everyone speak English in your village?
EE. 1. I kwara boro fo ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	EE. 1. Does someone speak English in their village?
2. I kwara boro kulu ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	2. Does anyone speak English in their village?
3. I kwara boro kulu si wani i'gilisi tyine?	3. Does no one speak English in their village?
4. I kwara borey kulu ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	4. Does everyone speak English in their village?
FF. 1. Ay kwara boro kulu si wani fara'si tyine.	FF. 1. No one speaks French in my village.
2. Iri kwara boro kulu si wani fara'si tyine.	2. No one speaks French in our village.
3. A kwara boro kulu si wani fara'si tyine.	3. No one speaks French in his/her village.
4. I kwara boro kulu si wani fara'si tyine.	4. No one speaks French in their village.
GG. 1. Ay kwara borey kulu ga wani fara'si tyine.	GG. 1. Everyone speaks French in my village.
2. Iri kwara borey kulu ga wani fara'si tyine.	2. Everyone speaks French in our village.
3. A kwara borey kulu ga wani fara'si tyine.	3. Everyone speaks French in his/her village.
4. I kwara borey kulu ga wani fara'si tyine.	4. Everyone speaks French in their village.

HH. 1. Ni kwara boro fo ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	HH. 1. Does someone speak English in your village?
Ay kwara boro kulu si wani i'gilisi tyine.	No one speaks English in my village.
2. Aran kwara boro kulu ga wani i'gilisi tyine?	2. Does anyone speak English in your village?
Iri kwara borey kulu ga wani i'gilisi tyine.	Everyone speaks English in our village.
3. A kwara boro fo ga wani fara'si tyine?	3. Does someone speak French in his/her village?
A kwara boro kulu si wani fara'si tyine.	No one speaks French in his/her village.
4. I kwara boro kulu ga wani fara'si tyine?	4. Does anyone speak French in their village?
I kwara borey kulu ga wani fara'si tyine.	Everyone speaks French in their village.

UNIT 30

Dialogue 1

hala	up to, until
lamba	number (def./indef.)
A: Hala lamba mardye no ni na tira tyew?	A: To what page have you read in the book?
B: Ay na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.	B: I've read to page twenty in it.
wasa	to be enough
A: A mana wasa.	A: It's not enough.
hala kayna	until later, tonight
B: Ay si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.	B: I can't study until tonight.
gumo	a lot, much
wati ka'	when
A: Ni si wani gumo kala wati ka' ni tyew gumo.	A: You won't know much until you've read a lot.
B: Hambara. Amma Bakari ga wani gumo, ba ka' a mana tyew gumo.	B: Maybe. But Bakari knows a lot, even though he hasn't read a lot.
za son'o	already
A: Oho, Bakari ga wani gumo za son'o.	A: Yes, Bakari knows a lot already.

Dialogue 2

de	if
A: De ni ga tyew gumo, ni ga wani gumo.	A: If you read a lot, you'll know a lot.
ma	(signals a dependent clause following a verb of emotion)
wodin se	so, therefore
B: Ay ga ba ay ma wani gumo, wodin se no ay ga tyew gumo.	B: I want to know a lot, so I read a lot.
zama	because
Amma ay si hin ga tyew hala kayna, zama ay si du tira.	But I can't study tonight, because I won't have a book.
fu	home (indef.)
A: De ni ga ba, ay ga ka'de ni se tira wati ka' ay to fu.	A: If you like, I'll bring you a book when I get home.
fo	greeting (def./indef.)
B: Fo nda goy.[1]	B: Thank you.
A: Kala nda to'ton.	A: Goodbye.
B: Kala nda to'ton.	B: Goodbye.

Note on the Dialogues

1. Literally, "a greeting to your work."

Structural Drills

A. 1. Hala lamba mardye no ni na tira tyew?	A. 1. To what page have you read in the book?
2. Hala lamba mardye no aran na tira tyew?	2. To what page have you read in the book?

3. Hala lamba mardye no a na tira tyew?	3. To what page has he/she read in the book?
4. Hala lamba mardye no i na tira tyew?	4. To what page have they read in the book?
B. 1. Ay na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.	B. 1. I've read to page twenty.
2. Iri na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.	2. We've read to page twenty.
3. A na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.	3. He's/She's read to page twenty.
4. I na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.	4. They've read to page twenty.
C. 1. Ay ga wani gumo za son'o.	C. 1. I know a lot already.
2. Iri ga wani gumo za son'o.	2. We know a lot already.
3. A ga wani gumo za son'o.	3. He/She knows a lot already.
4. I ga wani gumo za son'o.	4. They know a lot already.
5. Abdu ga wani gumo za son'o.	5. Abdu knows a lot already.
D. 1. Ay si wani gumo za son'o.	D. 1. I don't know much yet.
2. Iri si wani gumo za son'o.	2. We don't know much yet.
3. A si wani gumo za son'o.	3. He/She doesn't know much yet.
4. I si wani gumo za son'o.	4. They don't know much yet.
5. Abdu si wani gumo za son'o.	5. Abdu doesn't know much yet.
E. 1. Ni ga wani gumo wati ka' ni tyew gumo.	E. 1. You'll know a lot when you've read a lot.
2. Aran ga wani gumo wati ka' aran tyew gumo.	2. You'll know a lot when you've read a lot.
3. A ga wani gumo wati ka' a tyew gumo.	3. He'll/She'll know a lot when he's/she's read a lot.
4. I ga wani gumo wati ka' i tyew gumo.	4. They'll know a lot when they've read a lot.
5. Abdu ga wani gumo wati ka' a tyew gumo.	5. Abdu will know a lot when he's read a lot.

F. 1. Ni si wani gumo kala wati ka' ni tyew gumo.	F. 1. You won't know much until you've read a lot.
2. Aran si wani gumo kala wati ka' aran tyew gumo.	2. You won't know much until you've read a lot.
3. A si wani gumo kala wati ka' a tyew gumo.	3. He/She won't know much until he's/she's read a lot.
4. I si wani gumo kala wati ka' i tyew gumo.	4. They won't know much until they've read a lot.
5. Abdu si wani gumo kala wati ka' a tyew gumo.	5. Abdu won't know much until he's read a lot.
G. 1. Ni ga wani gumo zama ni ga tyew gumo.	G. 1. You know a lot because you read a lot.
2. Aran ga wani gumo zama aran ga tyew gumo.	2. You know a lot because you read a lot.
3. A ga wani gumo zama a ga tyew gumo.	3. He/She knows a lot because he/she reads a lot.
4. I ga wani gumo zama i ga tyew gumo.	4. They know a lot because they read a lot.
5. Abdu ga wani gumo zama a ga tyew gumo.	5. Abdu knows a lot because he reads a lot.
H. 1. Ay si wani gumo zama ay si tyew gumo.	H. 1. I don't know much because I don't read much.
2. Iri si wani gumo zama iri si tyew gumo.	2. We don't know much because we don't read much.
3. A si wani gumo zama a si tyew gumo.	3. He/She doesn't know much because he/she doesn't read much.
4. I si wani gumo zama i si tyew gumo.	4. They don't know much because they don't read much.
5. Abdu si wani gumo zama a si tyew gumo.	5. Abdu doesn't know much because he doesn't read much.

I. 1. Ni ga tyew gumo, wodin se no ni ga wani gumo.	I. 1. You read a lot, so you know a lot.
2. Aran ga tyew gumo, wodin se no aran ga wani gumo.	2. You read a lot, so you know a lot.
3. A ga tyew gumo, wodin se no a ga wani gumo.	3. He/She reads a lot, so he/she knows a lot.
4. I ga tyew gumo, wodin se no i ga wani gumo.	4. They read a lot, so they know a lot.
5. Abdu ga tyew gumo, wodin se no a ga wani gumo.	5. Abdu reads a lot, so he knows a lot.
J. 1. Ay si tyew gumo, wodin se no ay si wani gumo.	J. 1. I don't read much, so I don't know much.
2. Iri si tyew gumo, wodin se no iri si wani gumo.	2. We don't read much, so we don't know much.
3. A si tyew gumo, wodin se no a si wani gumo.	3. He/She doesn't read much, so he/she doesn't know much.
4. I si tyew gumo, wodin se no i si wani gumo.	4. They don't read much, so they don't know much.
5. Abdu si tyew gumo, wodin se no a si wani gumo.	5. Abdu doesn't read much, so he doesn't know much.
K. 1. Ay si wani gumo, wodin se no ay ga tyew gumo.	K. 1. I don't know much, so I don't read much.
2. Iri si wani gumo, wodin se no iri ga tyew gumo.	2. We don't know much, so we don't read much.
3. A si wani gumo, wodin se no a ga tyew gumo.	3. He/She doesn't know much, so he/she doesn't read much.
4. I si wani gumo, wodin se no i ga tyew gumo.	4. They don't know much, so they don't read much.
5. Abdu si wani gumo, wodin se no a ga tyew gumo.	5. Abdu doesn't know much, so he doesn't read much.

L. 1.	Ay si wani gumo, ba ka' ay tyew gumo.	I don't know much, even though I read a lot.
2.	Iri si wani gumo, ba ka' iri tyew gumo.	We don't know much, even though we read a lot.
3.	A si wani gumo, ba ka' a tyew gumo.	He/She doesn't know much, even though he/she reads a lot.
4.	I si wani gumo, ba ka' i tyew gumo.	They don't know much, even though they read a lot.
5.	Abdu si wani gumo, ba ka' a tyew gumo.	Abdu doesn't know much, even though he reads a lot.
M. 1.	Ni ga wani gumo, ba ka' ni mana tyew gumo.	You know a lot, even though you don't read much.
2.	Aran ga wani gumo, ba ka' aran mana tyew gumo.	You know a lot, even though you don't read much.
3.	A ga wani gumo, ba ka' a mana tyew gumo.	He/She knows a lot, even though he/she doesn't read much.
4.	I ga wani gumo, ba ka' i mana tyew gumo.	They know a lot, even though they don't read much.
5.	Abdu ga wani gumo, ba ka' a mana tyew gumo.	Abdu knows a lot, even though he doesn't read much.
N. 1.	Ay ga ba ay ma wani gumo, wodin se no ay ga tyew gumo.	I want to know a lot, so I read a lot.
2.	Iri ga ba iri ma wani gumo, wodin se no iri ga tyew gumo.	We want to know a lot, so we read a lot.
3.	A ga ba a ma wani gumo, wodin se no a ga tyew gumo.	He/She wants to know a lot, so he/she reads a lot.
4.	I ga ba i ma wani gumo, wodin se no i ga tyew gumo.	They want to know a lot, so they read a lot.
5.	Abdu ga ba a ma wani gumo, wodin se no a ga tyew gumo.	Abdu wants to know a lot, so he reads a lot.

O. 1. Ay ga tyew gumo, zama ay ga ba ay ma wani gumo.	O. 1. I read a lot, because I want to know a lot.
2. Iri ga tyew gumo, zama iri ga ba iri ma wani gumo.	2. We read a lot, because we want to know a lot.
3. A ga tyew gumo, zama a ga ba a ma wani gumo.	3. He/She reads a lot, because he/she wants to know a lot.
4. I ga tyew gumo, zama i ga ba i ma wani gumo.	4. They read a lot, because they want to know a lot.
5. Abdu ga tyew gumo, zama a ga ba a ma wani gumo.	5. Abdu reads a lot, because he wants to know a lot.
P. 1. Ni si tyew gumo, ba ni ga ba ni ma wani gumo.	P. 1. You don't read much, even though you want to know a lot.
2. Aran si tyew gumo, ba aran ga ba aran ma wani gumo.	2. You don't read much, even though you want to know a lot.
3. A si tyew gumo, ba a ga ba a ma wani gumo.	3. He/She doesn't read much, even though he/she wants to know a lot.
4. I si tyew gumo, ba i ga ba i ma wani gumo.	4. They don't read much, even though they want to know a lot.
5. Abdu si tyew gumo, ba a ga ba a ma wani gumo.	5. Abdu doesn't read much, even though he wants to know a lot.
Q. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew hala kayna.	Q. 1. I can't study tonight.
2. Iri si hin ga tyew hala kayna.	2. We can't study tonight.
3. A si hin ga tyew hala kayna.	3. He/She can't study tonight.
4. I si hin ga tyew hala kayna.	4. They can't study tonight.
5. Abdu si hin ga tyew hala kayna.	5. Abdu can't study tonight.
R. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew kala hala 2. kayna.	R. 1. I can't study until tonight.
2. Iri si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.	2. We can't study until tonight.
3. A si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.	3. He/She can't study until tonight.

4.	I si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.	4. They can't study until tonight.
5.	Abdu si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.	5. Abdu can't study until tonight.
S. 1.	Ay si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' ay to fu.	S. 1. I can't study until I get home.
2.	Iri si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' iri to fu.	2. We can't study until we get home.
3.	A si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a to fu.	3. He/She can't study until he/she gets home.
4.	I si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' i to fu.	4. They can't study until they get home.
5.	Abdu si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a to fu.	5. Abdu can't study until he gets home.
T. 1.	Ni ga hin ga tyew wati ka' ni to fu.	T. 1. You can study when you get home.
2.	Aran ga hin ga tyew wati ka' aran to fu.	2. You can study when you get home.
3.	A ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a to fu.	3. He/She can study when he/she gets home.
4.	I ga hin ga tyew wati ka' i to fu.	4. They can study when they get home.
5.	Abdu ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a to fu.	5. Abdu can study when he gets home.
U. 1.	Ay ga hin ga tyew wati ka' ay du tira.	U. 1. I can study when I have a book.
2.	Iri ga hin ga tyew wati ka' iri du tira.	2. We can study when we have a book.
3.	A ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a du tira.	3. He/She can study when he/she has a book.

4. I ga hin ga tyew wati ka' i du tira.	4. They can study when they have a book.
5. Abdu ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a du tira.	5. Abdu can study when he has a book.
V. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' ay du tira.	V. 1. I can't study until I have a book.
2. Iri si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' iri du tira.	2. We can't study until we have a book.
3. A si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a du tira.	3. He/She can't study until he/she has a book.
4. I si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' i du tira.	4. They can't study until they have a book.
5. Abdu si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a du tira.	5. Abdu can't study until he has a book.
W. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew zama ay si du tira.	W. 1. I can't study because I don't have a book.
2. Iri si hin ga tyew zama iri si du tira.	2. We can't study because we don't have a book.
3. A si hin ga tyew zama a si du tira.	3. He/She can't study because he/she doesn't have a book.
4. I si hin ga tyew zama i si du tira.	4. They can't study because they don't have a book.
5. Abdu si hin ga tyew zama a si du tira.	5. Abdu can't study because he doesn't have a book.
X. 1. Ay si du tira, wodin se no ay si hin ga tyew.	X. 1. I don't have a book, so I can't study.
2. Iri si du tira, wodin se no iri si hin ga tyew.	2. We don't have a book, so we can't study.
3. A si du tira, wodin se no a si hin ga tyew.	3. He/She doesn't have a book, so he/she can't study.

4. I si du tira, wodin se no i si hin ga tyew.	4. They don't have a book, so they can't study.
5. Abdu si du tira, wodin se no a si hin ga tyew.	5. Abdu doesn't have a book, so he can't study.
Y. 1. De ni ga ba, ay ga ka'de ni se tira hala kayna.	Y. 1. If you like, I'll bring you a book tonight.
2. De ni ga ba, iri ga ka'de ni se tira hala kayna.	2. If you like, we'll bring you a book tonight.
3. De ni ga ba, a ga ka'de ni se tira hala kayna.	3. If you like, he'll/she'll bring you a book tonight.
4. De ni ga ba, i ga ka'de ni se tira hala kayna.	4. If you like, they'll bring you a book tonight.
5. De ni ga ba, Abdu ga ka'de ni se tira hala kayna.	5. If you like, Abdu will bring you a book tonight.
Z. 1. De aran ga ba, ay ga ka'de aran se tira wati ka' ay to fu.	Z. 1. If you like, I'll bring you a book when I get home.
2. De aran ga ba, iri ga ka'de aran se tira wati ka' iri to fu.	2. If you like, we'll bring you a book when we get home.
3. De aran ga ba, a ga ka'de aran se tira wati ka' a to fu.	3. If you like, he'll/she'll bring you a book when he/she gets home.
4. De aran ga ba, i ga ka'de aran se tira wati ka' i to fu.	4. If you like, they'll bring you a book when they get home.
5. De aran ga ba, Abdu ga ka'de aran se tira wati ka' a to fu.	5. If you like, Abdu will bring you a book when he gets home.
AA. 1. De ni ga tyew gumo, ni ga wani gumo.	AA. 1. If you read a lot, you'll know a lot.
2. De aran ga tyew gumo, aran ga wani gumo.	2. If you read a lot, you'll know a lot.

3. De a ga tyew gumo, a ga wani gumo.	3. If he/she reads a lot, he'll/she'll know a lot.
4. De i ga tyew gumo, i ga wani gumo.	4. If they read a lot, they'll know a lot.
5. De Abdu ga tyew gumo, a ga wani gumo.	5. If Abdu reads a lot, he'll know a lot.
BB. 1. De ni si tyew gumo, ni si wani gumo.	BB. 1. If you don't read much, you won't know much.
2. De aran si tyew gumo, aran si wani gumo.	2. If you don't read much, you won't know much.
3. De a si tyew gumo, a si wani gumo.	3. If he/she doesn't read much, he/she won't know much.
4. De i si tyew gumo, i si wani gumo.	4. If they don't read much, they won't know much.
5. De Abdu si tyew gumo, a si wani gumo.	5. If Abdu doesn't read much, he won't know much.

DJERMA-ENGLISH-FRENCH GLOSSARY

a	1	he/she/it	il/elle
a	4	him/her	le/la/lui
a	6	his/her	son/sa/ses
aduha	20	late morning (indef.)	matin (dernière partie)
ahakku	19	eight	huit
alamisi	20	Thursday (indef.)	jeudi
alarba	20	Wednesday (indef.)	mercredi
alasar	20	early evening (indef.)	soir (première partie)
alborey	22	men (def.)	hommes
alfari	14	farmer (indef.)	cultivateur
alfazar	20	very early morning (indef.)	matin (très tôt)
alhadi	20	Sunday (indef.)	dimanche
almari	20	late evening (indef.)	soir (dernière partie)
alula	20	late afternoon (indef.)	après-midi (tard)
alwati	20	time (indef. sg.)	temps
amerike	28	American (indef. sg.)	américain
amma	19	but	mais
aran	4	you (pl. object)	vous
aran	1	you (pl. subject)	vous
aran	6	your (pl.)	votre/vos
arme	6	brother of a female (def./ indef.)	frère d'une femelle
asipti	20	Saturday (indef.)	samedi
atalata	20	Tuesday (indef.)	mardi
atinni	20	Monday (indef.)	lundi
ay	1	I	je
ay	4	me	me/moi
ay	6	my	mon/ma/mes
ba	23	even	même

ba	29	to want, need	vouloir, avoir besoin de
baba	6	father (indef.)	père
babo	6	father (def.)	père
ban	18	to end	finir
bana	23	to pay	payer
banda	22	with	avec
bani	1	health (indef.)	santé
bari	19	horse (indef.)	cheval
bena	20	sky (def.)	ciel
bene	27	above	au-dessus
beri	7	big (indef. sg.)	grand
bero	3	big (def. sg.)	grand
bero	25	elder brother/sister (def.)	aîné/aînée
bi	2	yesterday	hier
bifo	27	day before yesterday	avant-hier
bisa	20	to pass, be past	passer
bo'	13	on	sur
bo'	28	oneself	soi-même
bobo	16	a lot, much, many	beaucoup
borey	29	people (def.)	gens
borey kulu	29	everyone	tout le monde
bori	10	pretty, good (indef. sg.)	joli, bon
boro	13	person, one (indef.)	on, (une)personne
boro fo	29	someone	quelqu'un
boro kulu	29	anyone	n'importe qui
bu	16	to die	mourir
bumbey	21	oneself (def. pl.)	soi-même
bumbo	21	oneself (def.)	soi-même
buru	23	bread (indef. sg.)	pain
buru	20	cloud (indef.)	nuage
da	13	(emphasizes the manner of an action)	(donne de la force à la manière d'une action)

da'ga	25	as, like	comme
dahir	20	sure, certain	sûr
dala	23	dala, a five franc coin (indef.)	dala, cinq francs
dama	26	well-being (def./indef. sg.)	bien-être
damsi	16	peanut (indef. sg.)	arachide
dan	14	to forge	forger
de	30	if	si
dey	23	to buy	acheter
di	4	to see	voir
dibi	21	to mix	mélanger
do	1	to, to the place of	à, chez
dona	22	to be in the habit of	s'accoutumer à
dono	21	dono (a drink made of millet) (def. sg.)	dono (un boisson de mil)
donu	21	donu (a drink made of millet) (indef. sg.)	donu (un boisson de mil)
dori	26	sickness (indef. sg.)	maladie
du	19	to have, possess	posséder
duma	16	to sow	semer
dya'te	9	sick (indef. sg.)	malade
dyew	18	the cold part of the dry season (indef.)	partie froide de la saison sèche
dyewa'di	26	to make thirsty	donner de la soif
dyewo	18	the cold part of the dry season (def.)	partie froide de la saison sèche
dyineyey	2[illegible]	things (def.)	choses
dyirba'di	26	to make sleepy	donner du sommeil
dyiri	14	year (indef.)	an
ey	4	them	eux/les (pron.)
fakarey	22	to chat	bavarder
far	14	to farm	cultiver
fara'si	28	French (def./indef. sg.)	français
farey	11	fields (def.)	champs

fari	3	field (indef.)	champ
faro	1	field (def.)	champ
fedyi	19	sheep (indef. sg.)	mouton
fo	14	a/an, one	un
fo	11	which, what	quel/lequel
fo	30	greeting (def./indef.)	salut
fo'da	13	road, path (def.)	chemin
fo'do	13	road, path (indef.)	chemin
fofo	1	hello	bonjour
foy	1	to spend the day	passer la journée
fu	10	house (indef.)	maison
fu	30	home (indef.)	maison
fulo	23	fulo (a hat) (def.)	fulo (un bonnet)
furo	23	to enter	entrer
fuwey	11	houses (def.)	maisons
fuwo	1	house (def.)	maison
ga	14	to help	aider
ga	7	is/are/was/were/will be	être
ga	22	(signals a compound predicate)	(signale un attribut complexe)
ga	5	(signals the Future)	(signale le futur)
gako	14	helper (indef.)	assistant
gana	13	to follow	suivre
gasey	22	calabashes (def.)	calebasses
ga ti	11	(signals equivalence between expressions)	(signale équivalence entre deux expressions)
go	1	to be (Present)	être (présent)
go'da	10	to have	avoir
go ga	14	(signals action in progress)	(signale une action en train de se faire)
go no	23	there is/there are	il y a
gorn'o	19	chicken (indef.)	poulet

goro	19	to remain, dwell	rester, habiter
goro	22	to sit	s'asseoir
goy	14	work (indef. sg.)	travail
goy	22	to work	travailler
gu	14	five	cinq
gu'guri	23	egg (indef.)	oeuf
gumo	9	very	très
gumo	30	a lot, much	beaucoup
ha'	21	to drink	boire
ha'a	2	no	non
habey	11	markets (def.)	marchés
habo	1	market (def.)	marché
habo	27	week (def.)	semaine
habo ka' bisa	27	last week	semaine dernière
habu	3	market (indef.)	marché
habu	27	week (indef.)	semaine
habu bene	27	next week	semaine prochaine
habu wone ra	27	this week	cette semaine
ha'do	16	month (def.)	mois
ha'du	18	month (indef.)	mois
hala	30	up to, until	jusqu'à
hala kayna	30	until later, tonight	à plus tard, à ce soir
ham	21	meat (indef. sg.)	viande
hambara	20	perhaps, probably	peut-être, probablement
hamo	21	meat (def. sg.)	viande
hanan	9	clean (def./indef. sg.)	propre
hanberi	20	Friday (indef.)	vendredi
hara'di	26	to make hungry	donner de la faim
hare	13	direction (def./indef.)	direction
hare	13	toward	vers
hari	20	rain, water (indef. sg.)	pluie, eau
haw	19	cow (indef.)	vache

hawro	21	porridge, food (def. sg.)	bouillie
hawru	21	porridge, food (indef. sg.)	bouillie
hawsa	28	Hausa (language) (def./ indef. sg.)	haoussa (langue)
hawsa'tye	28	Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)	haoussa (race)
hay	29	thing (indef.)	chose
hay fo	29	something	quelque chose
hay kulu	29	anything, everything	n'importe quoi/tout
hayni	18	the hot part of the dry season (indef.)	partie chaude de la saison sèche
hayni	16	millet (indef. sg.)	mil
hayno	18	the hot part of the dry season (def.)	partie chaude de la saison sèche
hi	29	to borrow	emprunter
hin	29	can/may	pouvoir
hi'ka	14	two	deux
hi'ka'ta	13	second	deuxième
hima	22	to have to, must	devoir
hina	21	to cook	cuire
hinne	28	alone	seul
hirri	20	to be cloudy	être nuageux
hi'tyin	19	goat (indef.)	chèvre
hi'za	14	three	trois
hi'za'ta	13	third	troisième
hu'kuna	6	today	aujourd'hui
i	13	(replaces the noun when an adjective stands alone)	(remplace le nom lorsqu'un adjectif se trouve seul)
i	6	their	leur/leurs
i	23	them	eux/les (pron.)
i	1	they	ils/elles
iddu	19	six	six
i fo	16	what	qu'est-ce que/quoi
i fo se	22	why	pourquoi

i'ga	7	he/she (intensive form)	il/elle (forme intensive)
i'gey	7	they (intensive form)	ils/elles (forme intensive)
i'gilisi	28	English (indef. sg.)	anglais
iri	6	our	notre/nos
iri	4	us	nous
iri	1	we	nous
iye	19	seven	sept
ka	2	to come	venir
ka'	14	that (relative)	qui/que
ka'be	13	hand (indef.)	main
ka'be n'wari	13	right hand (indef.)	main droite
ka'buwo	13	left hand (def./indef.)	main gauche
ka'de	27	to bring	apporter
ka'kam	26	to oppress	serrer
kala	2	until	jusqu'à
kani	1	to lie down	se coucher
kay	22	to stand	se tenir debout
kay	13	to stop	s'arrêter
kaydiya	18	rainy season (def./indef.)	saison des pluies
kayna	16	a little, a few	un peu
kayna	3	small (def./indef. sg.)	petit
kayno	25	younger brother/sister (def.)	jeune frère/jeune soeur
ko'da	27	to take, escort	emmener
kolkoti	16	maize (indef. sg.)	maïs
korni	20	heat (indef. sg.)	chaleur
korno	26	fever (def.)	fièvre
koro'	27	to have fever	avoir de la fièvre
koto	27	to cough	tousser
kotwa	26	coughing (def.)	toux
koy	1	to go	aller
koy	23	owner (indef.)	propriétaire
koyo	23	owner (def.)	propriétaire

kubi	13	to turn	tourner
kudaku	16	sweet potato (indef. sg.)	patate
kulu	21	every, each, all	chaque/tout
kurko	14	herdsman (indef.)	berger
kuru	14	to herd	garder (bétail)
kusey	22	pots (def.)	marmites
kwara	1	village (def./indef.)	village
kwarey	11	villages (def.)	villages
kwayi	22	kwayi (a garment) (indef.)	kwayi (un boubou)
labari	29	news (indef. sg.)	nouvelles
labari tira	29	newspaper (def./indef. sg.)	journal
lamba	30	number (def./indef.)	numéro
lokotoro	27	doctor (indef.)	médecin
lokotoro kwara	27	dispensary (indef.)	dispensaire
ma	7	to call, name	s'appeler
ma	26	to feel	sentir
ma	30	(signals a dependent clause following a verb of feeling)	(signale une phrase subordonnée qui suit un verbe d'émotion)
ma	27	(signals a polite Imperative sg.)	(signale une forme polie de l'impératif)
man	13	near	près de
man	1	where	où
mana	2	(signals the negative in the Past)	(signale le négatif au passé)
mannan	19	last year	année dernière
manti	8	(signals the negative in the Present)	(signale le négatif au présent)
mardye	14	how much, how many	combien
marga	29	meeting (def./indef.)	réunion
mate	1	how, what	comment

may	7	who	qui
may	8	whose	de qui
mima'da	22	to gossip	potiner
mo	21	rice (indef. sg.)	riz
mo	4	too, also	aussi
moru	13	far	loin
motey	13	buses, trucks, cars (def.)	voitures
mudun	22	trousers (indef. sg.)	pantalons
mwa	21	rice (def. sg.)	riz
na	16	(signals the Past when the object precedes the verb)	(signale le passé lorsque le régime précède le verbe)
nda	1	and	et
nda	25	than	que
nda	2	with	avec
ne	11	it is/here is/there is/they are/here are/there are	c'est/ce sont/voici/voilà
newo	11	right here	ici même
ngwoya	1	hello	bonjour
ni	4	you (sg. object)	te
ni	1	you (sg. subject)	tu
ni	6	your (sg.)	ton/ta/tes
no	26	to give	donner
no	2	it is/it was/it will be/they are/they were/ they will be	être
no'gu	29	place (indef.)	lieu
no'gu fo	29	somewhere	quelque part
no'gu kulu	29	anywhere, everywhere	n'importe où/partout
noro	23	money (def. sg.)	argent
n'wari	13	item of food (indef.)	nourriture
nya	6	mother (indef.)	mère
nyan'o	6	mother (def.)	mère
nyun	22	to wash	laver
ohe	2	yes	oui

po'piter	16	potato (def./indef. sg.)	pomme de terre
ra	4	in	dans
rogo	16	cassava (indef. sg.)	manioc
safaro	26	medicine (def.)	médicament
samey	1	good	bon
se	28	for	pour
se	19	with	avec
si	5	(signals the negative in the Present and Future)	(signale le négatif au présent et au futur)
si	23	without	sans
si'da	10	to not have	ne pas avoir
si'dyi	16	to plant	planter
si'tin	18	to begin	commencer
si'tina	13	first, next	premier, prochain
son'o	18	now	maintenant
soro	26	diarrhea (def.)	diarrhée
soro	21	time (indef. sg.)	fois
soru	27	to have diarrhea	avoir la diarrhée
suba	5	tomorrow	demain
suba si	27	day after tomorrow	lendemain
susubay	20	early morning (indef.)	matin (tôt)
ta	22	to sew	coudre
tafe	22	tafe (a loose garment) (indef.)	tafe (un pagne)
tamma	20	to believe	croire
tasey	22	pans (def.)	plats
tatyi	14	four	quatre
te	14	to do, make	faire
tira	29	book (def./indef.)	livre
to	20	to arrive	arriver
to	23	O. K., agreed	d'accord
to'ton	2	to increase	augmenter
tyada	23	expensive (def./indef. sg.)	cher

tye	29	time, occasion (indef.)	fois
tyere	22	each other	l'un l'autre
tyew	28	to study, read	étudier, lire
tyewa'di	28	to teach	enseigner
tyewa'diko	28	teacher (indef.)	maître
tyi'di	23	plus	plus
tyin	20	night (indef.)	nuit
tyine	28	language (indef.)	langue
wa'de	10	wife (indef.)	femme
wala	18	or	ou
wala	2	(signals a question)	(signale une question)
wani	29	to know, speak	connaître, parler
wasa	30	to be enough	suffir
wati	21	time (indef. sg.)	temps
wati fo	2	when	quand
wati ka'	30	when	quand
wati kulu	29	always, any time	toujours
wo	14	(signals the subject in some structures)	(signale le sujet dans certaines structures)
wodin	12	that one (near by)	celui-là (tout près)
wodin banda	27	and then, after that	après cela
wodin se	30	so, therefore	c'est pourquoi
wofo	12	which one, what one	lequel
wohakim	23	eighty	quatre-vingts
wohe'di	12	that one (middle distance)	celui-là (moyenne distance)
wone	8	(signals possession in the singular)	(signale la possession au singulier)
wone	27	this	ce/cette
wone	11	this one here/that one there	celui-ci/celui-là
woney	11	(signals possession in the plural)	(signale la possession au pluriel)

woney	11	these/those ones	ceux-ci/ceux-là
wono	11	this/that one	celui-ci/celui-là
woro'ka	23	twenty	vingt
woro'za	23	thirty	trente
woy	19	ten	dix
woyborey	22	women (def.)	femmes
woydu	23	sixty	soixante
woygu	23	fifty	cinquante
woyme	6	sister of a male (def./ indef.)	soeur d'un mâle
woyno	20	sun (indef.)	soleil
woyongo	12	that one (far away)	celui-là (là-bas)
woytatyi	23	forty	quarante
woyye	23	seventy	soixante-dix
ya	28	am/is/are	être (présent)
ya	4	him/her	le/la (pron.)
ya	13	there	là
ya'	11	(signals the indefinite plural)	(signale le pluriel indéfini)
ye	27	to return	revenir
yegga	19	nine	neuf
yeni	20	coolness (indef. sg.)	fraîcheur
yeri	27	to vomit	vomir
yero	26	vomiting (def.)	vomissement
yesi	19	next year	année prochaine
yey	4	them	eux/les (pron.)
yo	19	camel (indef.)	chameau
yo'go	11	right over there, yonder	là-bas
za	14	since	depuis
za'bar	23	thousand	mille
zam	14	blacksmith (indef.)	forgeron
zama	30	because	parce que
zangu	23	hundred	cent
zanka	9	child (def./indef.)	enfant

zanka	25	young (def./indef.)	jeune
zankey	11	children (def.)	enfants
zari	20	early afternoon (indef.)	après-midi (tôt)
zarma	28	Djerma (def./indef.)	djerma
zaro	21	day (def.)	jour
za son'o	30	already	déjà
zen	25	to age	vieillir
zibi	9	dirty (def./indef. sg.)	sale

ENGLISH-DJERMA-FRENCH GLOSSARY

a	fo	14	un
above	bene	27	au-dessus
after that	wodin banda	27	après cela
to age	zen	25	vieillir
agreed	to	23	d'accord
all	kulu	21	tout
alone	hinne	28	seul
already	za son'o	30	déjà
also	mo	4	aussi
always	wati kulu	29	toujours
am	ya	28	suis
American (indef. sg.)	amerike	28	américain
an	fo	14	un
and	nda	1	et
and then	wodin banda	27	après cela
anyone	boro kulu	29	n'importe qui
anything	hay kulu	29	n'importe quoi
any time	wati kulu	29	toujours
anywhere	no'gu kulu	29	n'importe où
are	ga	7	être (présent)
are	ya	28	être (présent)
to arrive	to	20	arriver
as	da'ga	25	comme
because	zama	30	parce que
to be cloudy	hirri	20	être nuageux
to be enough	wasa	30	suffir
to begin	si'tin	18	commencer
to believe	tamma	20	croire
to be past	bisa	20	passer
to be (Present)	go	1	être (présent)
to be in the habit of	dona	22	s'accoutumer à
big (def. sg.)	bero	3	grand

big (indef. sg.)	beri	7	grand
blacksmith (indef.)	zam	14	forgeron
book (def./indef.)	tira	29	livre
to borrow	hi	29	emprunter
bread (indef. sg.)	buru	23	pain
to bring	ka'de	27	apporter
brother of a female (def./indef.)	arme	6	frère d'une femelle
buses (def.)	motey	13	voitures
but	amma	19	mais
to buy	dey	23	acheter
calabashes (def.)	gasey	22	calebasses
to call	ma	7	s'appeler
camel (indef.)	yo	19	chameau
can	hin	29	pouvoir
cars (def.)	motey	13	voitures
cassava (indef. sg.)	rogo	16	manioc
certain	dahir	20	sûr
to chat	fakarey	22	bavarder
chicken (indef.)	gorn'o	19	poulet
child (def./indef.)	zanka	9	enfant
children (def.)	zankey	11	enfants
clean (def./indef. sg.)	hanan	9	propre
cloud (indef.)	buru	20	nuage
the cold part of the dry season (def.)	dyewo	18	partie froide de la saison sèche
the cold part of the dry season (indef.)	dyew	18	partie froide de la saison sèche
to come	ka	2	venir
to cook	hina	21	cuire
coolness (indef. sg.)	yeni	20	fraîcheur
to cough	koto	27	tousser
coughing (def.)	kotwa	26	toux
cow (indef.)	haw	19	vache

day (def.)	zaro	21	jour
day after tomorrow	suba si	27	lendemain
day before yesterday	bifo	27	avant-hier
diarrhea (def.)	soro	26	diarrhée
to die	bu	16	mourir
direction (def./indef.)	hare	13	direction
dirty (def./indef. sg.)	zibi	9	sale
dispensary (indef.)	lokotoro kwara	27	dispensaire
Djerma (def./indef. sg.)	zarma	28	djerma
to do	te	14	faire
doctor (indef.)	lokotoro	27	médecin
a drink made of millet (def. sg.)	dono	21	boisson de mil
a drink made of millet (indef. sg.)	donu	21	boisson de mil
to drink	ha'	21	boire
to dwell	goro	19	habiter
each	kulu	21	chaque
each other	tyere	22	l'un l'autre
early afternoon (indef.)	zari	20	après-midi (tôt)
early evening (indef.)	alasar	20	soir (première partie)
early morning (indef.)	susubay	20	matin (tôt)
egg (indef.)	gu'guri	23	oeuf
eight	ahakku	19	huit
eighty	wahakku	23	quatre-vingts
to end	ban	18	finir
English (indef. sg.)	i'gilisi	28	anglais
to enter	furo	23	entrer
to escort	ko'da	27	emmener
even	ba	29	même
every	kulu	21	chaque
everyone	borey kulu	29	tout le monde
everything	hay kulu	29	tout
everywhere	no'gu kulu	29	partout

expensive (def./indef. sg)	tyada	23	cher
far	moru	13	loin
to farm	far	14	cultiver
farmer (indef.)	alfari	14	cultivateur
father (def.)	babo	6	père
father (indef.)	baba	6	père
to feel	ma	26	sentir
fever (def.)	korno	26	fièvre
a few	kayna	16	un peu
field (def.)	faro	1	champ
field (indef.)	fari	3	champ
fields (def.)	farey	11	champs
fifty	woygu	23	cinquante
first	si'tina	13	premier
five	gu	14	cinq
a five franc coin (indef.)	dala	23	monnaie de cinq francs
to follow	gana	13	suivre
food (def. sg.)	hawro	21	porridge
food (indef. sg.)	hawru	21	porridge
for	se	28	pour
to forge	dan	14	forger
forty	woytatyi	23	quarante
four	tatyi	14	quatre
French (def./indef. sg.)	fara'si	28	français
Friday (indef.)	hanberi	20	vendredi
a garment (indef.)	kwayi	22	boubou
to give	no	26	donner
to go	koy	1	aller
goat (indef.)	hi'tyin	19	chèvre
good	samey	1	bon
good (indef. sg.)	bori	10	bon
to gossip	mima'da	22	potiner
greeting (def./indef.)	fo	30	salut

hand (indef.)	ka'be	13	main
a hat (def.)	fulo	23	bonnet
Hausa (language) (def./ indef. sg.)	hawsa	28	haoussa (langue)
Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)	hawsa'tye	28	haoussa (race)
to have	du	19	avoir
to have	go'da	10	avoir
to have diarrhea	soru	27	avoir la diarrhée
to have fever	koro'	27	avoir de la fièvre
to have to	hima	22	devoir
he	a	1	il
he (intensive form)	i'ga	7	il (forme intensive)
health (indef.)	bani	1	santé
heat (indef. sg.)	korni	20	chaleur
hello	fofo	1	bonjour
hello	ngwoya	1	bonjour
to help	ga	14	aider
helper (indef.)	gako	14	assistant
her	ya	4	la (pron.)
her	a	4	la (pron.)
her	a	6	son/sa/ses
to herd	kuru	14	garder (bétail)
herdsman (indef.)	kurko	14	berger
here are	ne	11	voici
here is	ne	11	voici
him	a	4	le (pron.)
him	ya	4	le (pron.)
his	a	6	son/sa/ses
home	fu	30	maison
horse (indef.)	bari	19	cheval
the hot part of the dry season (def.)	hayno	18	partie chaude de la saison sèche
the hot part of the dry season (indef.)	hayni	18	partie chaude de la saison sèche

house (def.)	fuwo	1	maison
house (indef.)	fu	10	maison
houses (def.)	fuwey	11	maisons
how	mate	1	comment
how many	mardye	14	combien
how much	mardye	14	combien
hundred	zangu	23	cent
I	ay	1	je
if	de	30	si
in	ra	4	dans
to increase	to'ton	2	augmenter
is	ga	7	être (présent)
is	ya	28	être (présent)
it	a	1	il/elle
item of food (indef.)	n'wari	13	nourriture
it is	ne	11	c'est
it is	no	2	c'est
it was	no	2	c'était
it will be	no	2	ce sera
to know	wani	29	connaître
language (indef.)	tyine	28	langue
last week	habo ka' bisa	27	semaine dernière
last year	mannan	19	année dernière
late afternoon (indef.)	alula	20	après-midi (tard)
late evening (indef.)	almari	20	soir (dernière partie)
late morning (indef.)	aduha	20	matin (tard)
left hand (def./indef.)	ka'buwo	13	main gauche
to lie down	kani	1	se coucher
like	da'ga	25	comme
a little	kayna	16	un peu
a loose garment (indef.)	tafe	22	pagne
a lot	bobo	16	beaucoup
a lot	gumo	30	beaucoup

porridge (def. sg.)	hawro	21	bouillie
porridge (indef. sg.)	hawru	21	bouillie
to possess	du	19	posséder
potato (def./indef. sg.)	po'piter	16	pomme de terre
pots (def.)	kusey	22	marmites
pretty (indef. sg.)	bori	10	joli
probably	hambara	20	probablement
rain (indef. sg.)	hari	20	pluie
rainy season (def./ indef.)	kaydiya	18	saison des pluies
to read	tyew	28	lire
to remain	goro	19	rester
to return	ye	27	revenir
rice (def. sg.)	mwa	21	riz
rice (indef. sg.)	mo	21	riz
right hand (indef.)	ka'be n'wari	13	main droite
right here	newo	11	ici même
right over there	yo'go	11	là-bas
road (def.)	fo'da	13	chemin
road (indef.)	fo'do	13	chemin
Saturday (indef.)	asipti	20	samedi
second	hi'ka'ta	13	deuxième
to see	di	4	voir
seven	iye	19	sept
seventy	woyye	23	soixante-dix
to sew	ta	22	coudre
she	a	1	elle
she (intensive form)	i'ga	7	elle (forme intensive)
sheep (indef. sg.)	fedyi	19	mouton
sick (indef. sg.)	dya'te	9	malade
sickness (indef. sg.)	dori	26	maladie
since	za	14	depuis
sister of a male (def./indef.)	woyme	6	soeur d'un mâle

to sit	goro 22	s'asseoir
six	iddu 19	six
sixty	woydu 23	soixante
sky (def.)	bena 20	ciel
small (def./indef. sg.)	kayna 3	petit
so	wodin se 30	c'est pourquoi
someone	boro fo 29	quelqu'un
something	hay fo 29	quelque chose
somewhere	no'gu fo 29	quelque part
to sow	duma 16	semer
to speak	wani 29	parler
to spend the day	foy 1	passer la journée
to stand	kay 22	se tenir debout
to stop	kay 13	s'arrêter
to study	tyew 28	étudier
sun (indef.)	woyno 20	soleil
Sunday (indef.)	alhadi 20	dimanche
sure	dahir 20	sûr
sweet potato (indef. sg.)	kudaku 16	patate
to take	ko'da 27	emmener
to teach	tyewa'di 28	enseigner
teacher (indef.)	tyewa'diko 28	maître
ten	woy 19	dix
than	nda 25	que
that (relative)	ka' 14	que
that one	wono 11	celui-là
that one (far away)	woyongo 12	celui-là (là-bas)
that one (middle distance)	wohe'di 12	celui-là (moyenne distance)
that one (near by)	wodin 12	celui-là (tout près)
that one there	wone 11	celui-là
their	i 6	leur/leurs
them	ey 4	eux/les (pron.)
them	i 23	eux/les (pron.)

them	yey	4	eux/les (pron.)
there	ya	13	là
there are	go no	23	il y a
there are	ne	11	voilà
therefore	wodin se	30	c'est pourquoi
there is	go no	23	il y a
there is	ne	11	voilà
these ones	woney	11	ceux-ci
they	i	1	ils/elles
they (intensive form)	i'gey	7	ils/elles (form intensive)
they are	ne	11	ce sont
they are	no	2	ils/elles sont
they were	no	2	ils/elles étaient
they will be	no	2	ils/elles seront
time (indef.)	tye	29	fois
things (def.)	dyineyey	23	choses
third	hi'za'ta	13	troisième
thirty	woro'za	23	trente
this	wone	27	ce/cette
this one	wono	11	celui-ci
this one here	wone	11	celui-ci
this week	habu wone ra	27	cette semaine
those ones	woney	11	ceux-là
thousand	za'bar	23	mille
three	hi'za	14	trois
Thursday (indef.)	alamisi	20	jeudi
time (indef. sg.)	alwati	20	temps
time (indef. sg.)	soro	21	fois
time (indef.)	tye	29	fois
time (indef. sg.)	wati	21	temps
to	do	1	chez, à
today	hu'kuna	6	aujourd'hui
tonight	hala kayna	30	ce soir
tomorrow	suba	5	demain

too	mo	4	aussi
to the place of	do	1	chez, à
toward	hare	13	vers
trousers (indef. sg.)	mudun	22	pantalons
trucks (def.)	motey	13	voitures
Tuesday (indef.)	atalata	20	mardi
to turn	kubi	13	tourner
twenty	woro'ka	23	vingt
two	hi'ka	14	deux
until	hala	30	jusqu'à
until	kala	2	jusqu'à
until later	hala kayna	30	à plus tard
up to	hala	30	jusqu'à
us	iri	4	nous
very	gumo	9	très
very early morning (indef.)	alfazar	20	matin (très tôt)
village (def./indef.)	kwara	1	village
villages (def.)	kwarey	11	villages
to vomit	yeri	27	vomir
vomiting (def.)	yero	26	vomissement
to want	ba	23	vouloir
was	ga	7	être
to wash	nyun	22	laver
water (indef. sg.)	hari	20	eau
we	iri	1	nous
Wednesday (indef.)	alarba	20	mercredi
week (def.)	habo	27	semaine
week (indef.)	habu	27	semaine
well-being (def./indef.)	dama	26	bien-être
were	ga	7	être
what	fo	11	lequel
what	i fo	16	qu'est-ce que
what	mate	1	comment
what one	wofo	12	lequel

when	wati fo	2	quand
when	wati ka'	30	quand
where	man	1	ou
which	fo	11	quel
which one	wofo	12	lequel
who	may	7	qui
whose	may	8	de qui
why	i fo se	22	pourquoi
wife (indef.)	wa'de	10	femme
will be	ga	7	être
with	banda	22	avec
with	nda	2	avec
with	se	19	avec
without	si	23	sans
women (def.)	woyborey	22	femmes
work (indef. sg.)	goy	14	travail
to work	goy	22	travailler
year (indef.)	dyiri	14	an
yes	oho	2	oui
yesterday	bi	2	hier
yonder	yo'go	11	là-bas
you (sg. object)	ni	4	te
you (sg. subject)	ni	1	tu
young (def./indef.)	zanka	25	jeune
younger brother/sister (def.)	kayno	25	jeune frère/jeune soeur
you (pl. object)	aran	4	vous
you (pl. subject)	aran	1	vous
your (pl.)	aran	6	votre/vos
your (sg.)	ni	6	ton/ta/tes

FRENCH-DJERMA-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

à	do	1	to
à ce soir	hala kayna	30	until tonight
acheter	dey	23	to buy
aider	ga	14	to help
aîné	bero	25	elder brother (def.)
aînée	bero	25	elder sister (def.)
aller	koy	1	to go
américain	amerike	28	American (indef. sg.)
an	dyiri	14	year (indef.)
anglais	i'gilisi	28	English (indef. sg.)
année dernière	mannan	19	last year
année prochaine	yesi	19	next year
à plus tard	hala kayna	30	until later
apporter	ka'de	27	to bring
après-midi (tard)	alula	20	late afternoon (indef.)
après-midi (tôt)	zari	20	early afternoon (indef.)
après cela	wodin banda	27	and then, after that
arachide	damsi	16	peanut (indef. sg.)
argent	noro	23	money (def. sg.)
arriver	to	20	to arrive
assistant	gako	14	helper (indef.)
au-dessus	bene	27	above
augmenter	to'ton	2	to increase
aujourd'hui	hu'kuna	6	today
aussi	mo	4	too, also
avant-hier	bifo	27	day before yesterday
avec	banda	22	with
avec	nda	2	with
avec	se	19	with
avoir	go'da	10	to have
avoir besoin de	ba	23	to want, need
avoir de la fièvre	koro'	27	to have fever

avoir la diarrhée	soru	27	to have diarrhea
bavarder	fakarey	22	to chat
beaucoup	bobo	16	a lot, much, many
beaucoup	gumo	30	a lot, much
berger	kurko	14	herdsman (indef.)
bien-être	dama	26	well-being (def./indef. sg.)
boire	ha'	21	to drink
boisson de mil	dono	21	a drink made of millet (def. sg.)
boisson de mil	donu	21	a drink made of millet (indef. sg.)
bon	bori	10	good (indef. sg.)
bon	samey	1	good
bonjour	fofo	1	hello
bonjour	ngwoya	1	hello
bonnet	fulo	23	a hat (def.)
boubou	kwayi	22	a garment (indef.)
bouillie	hawro	21	porridge, food
bouillie	hawru	21	porridge, food (indef. sg.)
calebasses	gasey	22	calabashes (def.)
ce	wone	27	this
celui-ci	wone	11	this one here
celui-ci	wono	11	this one
celui-là	wohe'di	12	that one (middle distance)
celui-là	wone	11	that one there
celui-là	wono	11	that one
celui-là (là-bas)	woyongo	12	that one (far away)
celui-là (tout près)	wodin	12	that one (near by)
cent	zangu	23	hundred
ce sont	ne	11	they are
c'est	ne	11	it is
c'est pourquoi	wodin se	30	so, therefore
cette	wone	27	this
cette semaine	habu wone ra	27	this week
ceux-ci	woney	11	these ones

ceux-là	woney	11	those ones
chaleur	korni	20	heat (indef. sg.)
chameau	yo	19	camel (indef.)
champ	fari	3	field (indef.)
champ	faro	1	field (def.)
champs	farey	11	fields (def.)
chaque	kulu	21	every, each
chemin	fo'da	13	road, path (def.)
chemin	fo'do	13	road, path (indef.)
cher	tyada	23	expensive (def./indef. sg.)
cheval	bari	19	horse (indef.)
chèvre	hi'tyin	19	goat (indef.)
chez	do	1	to the place of
chose	hay	29	thing (indef.)
choses	dyineyey	23	things (def.)
ciel	bena	20	sky (def.)
cinq	gu	14	five
cinquante	woygu	23	fifty
combien	mardye	14	how much, how many
comme	da'ga	25	as, like
commencer	si'tin	18	to begin
comment	mate	1	how, what
connaître	wani	29	to know
coudre	ta	22	to sew
croire	tamma	20	to believe
cuire	hina	21	to cook
cultiver	far	14	to farm
cultivateur	alfari	14	farmer (indef.)
d'accord	to	23	O. K., agreed
dans	ra	4	in
déjà	za son'o	30	already
demain	suba	5	tomorrow
depuis	za	14	since

de qui	may	8	whose
deux	hi'ka	14	two
deuxième	hi'ka'ta	13	second
devoir	hima	22	to have to, must
diarrhée	soro	26	diarrhea (def.)
dimanche	alhadi	20	Sunday (indef.)
direction	hare	13	direction (def./indef.)
dispensaire	lokotoro kwara	27	dispensary (indef.)
dix	woy	19	ten
djerma	zarma	28	Djerma (def./indef. sg.)
donner	no	26	to give
donner de la faim	hara'di	26	to make hungry
donner de la soif	dyewa'di	26	to make thirsty
donner du sommeil	dyirba'di	26	to make sleepy
eau	hari	20	water
elle	a	1	she
elle (form intensive)	i'ga	7	she (intensive form)
elles	i	1	they
elles (form intensive)	i'gey	7	they (intensive form)
emmener	ko'da	27	to take, escort
emprunter	hi	29	to borrow
enfant	zanka	9	child (def./indef.)
enfants	zankey	11	children (def.)
enseigner	tyewa'di	28	to teach
entrer	furo	23	to enter
et	nda	1	and
être	ga	7	is/are/was/were/will be
être	no	2	it is/it was/it will be/ they are/they were/ they will be
être nuageux	hirri	20 -	to be cloudy
être (présent)	go	1	to be (Present)
être (présent)	ya	28	am/is/are

étudier	tyew 28	to study
eux	ey 4	them
eux	i 23	them
eux	yey 4	them
faire	te 14	to do, make
femme	wa'de 10	wife (indef.)
femmes	woyborey 22	women (def.)
fièvre	korno 26	fever (def.)
finir	ban 18	to end
fois	soro 21	time (indef. sg.)
fois	tye 29	time, occasion (indef.)
forger	dan 14	to forge
forgeron	zam 14	blacksmith
fraîcheur	yeni 20	coolness (indef. sg.)
français	fara'si 28	French (def./indef. sg.)
frère d'une femelle	arme 6	brother of a female (def./ indef.)
garder (bétail)	kuru 14	to herd
gens	borey 29	people (def.)
grand	beri 7	big (indef. sg.)
grand	bero 3	big (def. sg.)
habiter	goro 19	to dwell
haoussa (langue)	hawsa 28	Hausa (language) (def./ indef. sg.)
haoussa (race)	hawsa'tye 28	Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)
hier	bi 2	yesterday
hommes	alborey 22	men (def.)
huit	ahakku 19	eight
ici même	newo 11	right here
il	a 1	he/it
il (forme intensive)	i'ga 7	he/it (intensive form)
ils	i 1	they
ils (forme intensive)	i'gey 7	they (intensive form)
il y a	go no 23	there is/there are
je	ay 1	I

jeudi	alamisi	20	Thursday (indef.)
jeune	zanka	25	young (def./indef.)
jeune frère	kayno	25	younger brother (def.)
jeune soeur	kayno	25	younger sister (def.)
joli	bori	10	pretty (indef. sg.)
jour	zaro	21	day (def.)
journal	labari tira	29	newspaper (def./indef. sg.)
jusqu'à	hala	30	up to, until
jusqu'à	kala	2	until
la (pron.)	a	4	him/her
la (pron.)	ya	4	her
là	ya	13	there
là-bas	yo'go	11	right over there, yonder
langue	tyine	28	language (indef.)
laver	nyun	22	to wash
le (pron.)	a	4	him/her
le (pron.)	ya	4	him
lendemain	suba si	27	day after tomorrow
lequel	fo	11	which, what
lequel	wofo	12	which one, what one
les (pron.)	ey	4	them
les (pron.)	i	23	them
les (pron.)	yey	4	them
leur	i	6	their
leurs	i	6	their
lieu	no'gu	29	place (indef.)
lire	tyew	28	to read
livre	tira	29	book (def./indef.)
loin	moru	13	far
lui	a	4	him/her
lundi	atinni	20	Monday (indef.)
l'un l'autre	tyere	22	each other
ma	ay	6	my
main	ka'be	13	hand (indef.)
main droite	ka'be n'wari	13	right hand (indef.)

main gauche	ka'buwo	13	left hand (def./indef.)
maintenant	son'o	18	now
mais	amma	19	but
maïs	kolkoti	16	maize (indef. sg.)
maison	fu	30	home (indef.)
maison	fu	10	house (indef.)
maison	fuwo	1	house (def.)
maisons	fuwey	11	houses (def.)
maître	tyewa'diko	28	teacher (indef.)
malade	dya'te	9	sick (indef. sg.)
maladie	dori	26	sickness (indef. sg.)
manioc	rogo	16	cassava (indef. sg.)
marché	habo	1	market (def.)
marché	habu	3	market (indef.)
marchés	habey	11	markets (def.)
mardi	atalata	20	Tuesday (indef.)
marmites	kusey	22	pots (def.)
matin (tard)	aduha	20	late morning (indef.)
matin (tôt)	susubay	20	early morning (indef.)
matin (très tôt)	alfazar	20	very early morning (indef.)
me	ay	4	me
médecin	lokotoro	27	doctor (indef.)
médicament	safaro	26	medicine (def.)
mélanger	dibi	21	to mix
même	ba	29	even
mercredi	alarba	20	Wednesday (indef.)
mère	nya	6	mother (indef.)
mère	nyan'o	6	mother (def.)
mes	ay	6	my
mil	hayni	16	millet (indef. sg.)
mille	za'bar	23	thousand
moi	ay	4	me
monnaie de cinq francs	dala	23	a five franc coin (indef.)

mois	ha'do	16	month (def.)
mois	ha'du	18	month (indef.)
mon	ay	6	my
mourir	bu	16	to die
mouton	fedyi	19	sheep (indef. sg.)
ne pas avoir	si'da	10	to not have
neuf	yegga	19	nine
n'importe où	no'gu kulu	29	anywhere
n'importe qui	boro kulu	29	anyone
n'importe quoi	hay kulu	29	anything
non	ha'a	2	no
nos	iri	6	our
notre	iri	6	our
nourriture	n'wari	13	item of food (indef.)
nous	iri	4	us
nous	iri	1	we
nouvelles	labari	29	news (indef. sg.)
nuage	buru	20	cloud (indef.)
nuit	tyin	20	night (indef.)
numéro	lamba	30	number (def./indef.)
oeuf	gu'guri	23	egg (indef.)
on	boro	13	one (indef.)
ou	wala	18	or
où	man	1	where
oui	oho	2	yes
pagne	tafe	22	a loose garment (indef.)
pain	buru	23	bread (indef. sg.)
pantalons	mudun	22	trousers (indef. sg.)
parce que	zama	30	because
parler	wani	29	to speak
partie chaude de la saison sèche	hayni	18	the hot part of the dry season (indef.)
partie chaude de la saison sèche	hayno	18	the hot part of the dry season (def.)

partie froide de la saison sèche	dyew	18	the cold part of the dry season (indef.)
partie froide de la saison sèche	dyewo	18	the cold part of the dry season (def.)
partout	no'gu kulu	29	everywhere
passer	bisa	20	to pass
passer la journée	foy	1	to spend the day
patate	kudaku	16	sweet potato (indef. sg.)
payer	bana	23	to pay
père	baba	6	father (indef.)
père	babo	6	father (def.)
(une) personne	boro	13	person (indef.)
petit	kayna	3	small (def./indef.)
peut-être	hambara	20	perhaps
planter	si'dyi	16	to plant
plats	tasey	22	pans (def.)
pluie	hari	20	rain
plus	tyi'di	23	plus
pomme de terre	po'piter	16	potato
posséder	du	19	to have, possess
potiner	mima'da	22	to gossip
poulet	gorn'o	19	chicken (indef.)
pour	se	28	for
pourquoi	i fo se	22	why
pouvoir	hin	29	can/may
premier	si'tina	13	first
près de	man	13	near
probablement	hambara	20	probably
prochain	si'tina	13	next
propre	hanan	9	clean (def./indef. sg.)
propriétaire	koy	23	owner (indef.)
propriétaire	koyo	23	owner (def.)
quand	wati fo	2	when
quand	wati ka'	30	when
quarante	woytatyi	23	forty

quatre	tatyi	14	four
quatre-vingts	wohakku	23	eighty
que	ka'	14	that (relative)
que	nda	25	than
quel	fo	11	which, what
quelque chose	hay fo	29	something
quelque part	no'gu fo	29	somewhere
quelqu'un	boro fo	29	someone
qu'est-ce que	i fo	16	what
qui	ka'	14	that (relative)
qui	may	7	who
quoi	i fo	16	what
rester	goro	19	to remain
réunion	marga	29	meeting (def./indef.)
revenir	ye	27	to return
riz	mo	21	rice (indef. sg.)
ris	mwa	21	rice (def. sg.)
sa	a	6	his/her
s'accoutumer à	dona	22	to be in the habit of
saison des pluies	kaydiya	18	rainy season (def./indef.)
sale	zibi	9	dirty (def./indef. sg.)
salut	fo	30	greeting (def./indef.)
samedi	asipti	20	Saturday (indef.)
sans	si	23	without
santé	bani	1	health (indef.)
s'appeler	ma	7	to call, name
s'arrêter	kay	13	to stop
s'asseoir	goro	22	to sit
se coucher	kani	1	to lie down
semaine	habo	27	week (def.)
semaine	habu	27	week (indef.)
semaine dernière	habo ka' bisa	27	last week
semaine prochaine	habu bene	27	next week
semer	duma	16	to sow
sentir	ma	26	to feel

sept	iye	19	seven
serrer	ka'kam	26	to oppress
ses	a	6	his/her
se tenir debout	kay	22	to stand
seul	hinne	28	alone
si	de	30	if
six	iddu	19	six
soeur d'un mâle	woyme	6	sister of a male (def./ indef.)
soi-même	bo'	28	oneself (def.)
soi-même	bumbey	21	oneself (def. pl.)
soi-même	bumbo	21	oneself
soir (première partie)	alasar	20	early evening (indef.)
soir (dernière partie)	almari	20	late evening (indef.)
soixante	woydu	23	sixty
soixante-dix	woyye	23	seventy
soleil	woyno	20	sun (indef.)
son	a	6	his/her
suffir	wasa	30	to be enough
suivre	gana	13	to follow
sur	bo'	13	on
sûr	dahir	20	sure, certain
ta	ni	6	your (sg.)
te	ni	4	you (sg. object)
temps	alwati	20	time (indef. sg.)
temps	wati	21	time (indef. sg.)
tes	ni	6	your (sg.)
ton	ni	6	your (sg.)
toujours	wati kulu	29	always, any time
tourner	kubi	13	to turn
tousser	koto	27	to cough
tout	hay kulu	29	everything
tout	kulu	21	all
tout le monde	borey kulu	29	everyone

toux	kotwa	26	coughing (def.)
travail	goy	14	work (indef. sg.)
travailler	goy	22	to work
très	gumo	9	very
trente	woro'za	23	thirty
trois	hi'za	14	three
troisième	hi'za'ta	13	third
tu	ni	1	you (sg. subject)
un	fo	14	a/an, one
un peu	kayna	16	a little, a few
vache	haw	19	cow (indef.)
vendredi	hanberi	20	Friday (indef.)
venir	ka	2	to come
vers	hare	13	toward
viande	ham	21	meat (indef. sg.)
viande	hamo	21	meat (def. sg.)
vieillir	zen	25	to age
village	kwara	1	village (def./indef.)
villages	kwarey	11	villages (def.)
vingt	woro'ka	23	twenty
voici	ne	11	here is, here are
voilà	ne	11	there is, there are
voir	di	4	to see
voitures	motey	13	buses, trucks, cars (def.)
vomir	yeri	27	to vomit
vomissement	yero	26	vomiting (def.)
vos	aran	6	your (pl.)
vouloir	ba	23	to want, need
vous	aran	4	you (pl. object)
vous	aran	1	you (pl. subject)
votre	aran	6	your (pl.)